DRAFT 2026 *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*

Contents

Part 2 Tables

To submit comments on proposed changes in this draft, please visit www.fgiguidelines.net.

1.1 Introduction

1.1-1 General

1.1-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all new construction and major renovation projects in outpatient facilities.

1.1-1.2 Minimum Standards for New Facilities and Major Renovations

1.1-1.2.1 ~~Each chapter in this document contains information intended as~~ Standards set forth in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall be considered minimum standards for design and construction of new outpatient facilities and major renovations of existing outpatient facilities as described further below and

~~**1.1-1.2.2** Standards set forth in the *Guidelines* shall be considered minimum and~~ do not prohibit designing facilities and systems that exceed these requirements.

~~**1.1-1.2.2.1** The *Guidelines* text is not intended to restrict innovation and improvement in design or construction techniques. Accordingly, authorities adopting these standards as code are encouraged to approve plans and specifications that contain deviations if they determine the applicable intent or objective of the standards has been met.~~

~~**1.1-1.2.2.2** Use of new or alternate concepts shall be permitted when the requesting organization demonstrates an equal or higher operational goal is achieved, and safety is not compromised.~~

1.1-2 New Construction

Projects with any of the following scopes of work shall be considered new construction and shall comply with the requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*:

1.1-2.1 Site preparation for and construction of entirely new structures and systems

1.1-2.2 Structural additions to existing facilities that result in an increase of occupied floor area

~~**1.1-2.3** Change in function in an entire existing building or an entire area in an existing building~~

1.1-3 Renovation

1.1-3.1 General

1.1-3.1.1 Compliance Requirements

1.1-3.1.1.1 Where renovation or replacement work is done in an existing facility, all new work or additions or both shall comply with applicable sections of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* ~~and local, state, and federal codes~~.

1.1-3.1.1.2 Major renovation projects. Projects with any of the following scopes of work shall be considered a major renovation and shall comply with the requirements for new construction in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* to the extent possible as determined by the authority having jurisdiction:

(1) A series of planned changes and updates to an existing facility

(2) A renovation project that includes modification of an entire building or an entire area in a building to accommodate a new use or occupancy

(3) Change in function in an area of an existing building for which the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* requirements for clinical spaces, clinical support areas, or infrastructure are different than those for the originally approved function.

1.1-3.1.1.3 Occupancy conversion projects. When a building is converted from one occupancy type to another, it shall comply with the new construction requirements.

1.1-3.1.1.4 Building system projects

(1) Only the altered, renovated, or modernized portion of an existing building system or individual component shall be required to meet the installation and equipment requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

(2) When such construction impairs the performance of the balance of an affected building system, upgrades to that system shall be required beyond the limits of the project to the extent required to maintain existing operational performance.

1.1-3.1.2 Exceptions

1.1-3.1.2.1 Where major existing structural or building system elements make total compliance impractical or impossible, exceptions shall be considered.

1.1-3.1.2.2 ~~Minor renovation or replacement work shall be permitted to be exempted from~~ The following exceptions to the requirements in Section 1.1-3.1.1 (Compliance Requirements) shall be permitted provided they do not reduce the level of health and safety in an existing facility.

(1) Routine repairs and maintenance to buildings, systems, or equipment

(2) Replacement of building furnishings and movable or fixed equipment

(3) Minor changes to the configuration of an existing space that have to impact on life safety or program

(4) Cosmetic changes or upgrades to an existing space

1.1-3.1.2.3 Improvements to a building system or a space that cannot reasonably meet the requirements of this document ~~should~~ shall be permitted provided the improvement does not impair other systems or functions of the building.

1.1-3.1.2.4 Existing systems that are not in strict compliance with the provisions of this document ~~should~~ shall be permitted to continue in use, unless the AHJ has determined that such use constitutes a distinct hazard to life.

1.1-3.1.2.5 Replacement of mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and fire protection equipment and infrastructure for maintenance purposes due to the failure or degraded performance of the components being replaced ~~should~~ shall be permitted provided the health and safety in the facility is maintained at existing levels.

1.1-3.1.3 Phased Projects

~~These standards~~ The requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall not be construed as prohibiting a single phase of ~~improvement that is part of~~ a multi-phase construction plan ~~for a single project~~ or making upgrades or alterations as part of a phased, long-range safety improvement plan.

1.1-3.1.4 Temporary Waivers

When parts of an existing facility essential to continued overall facility operation cannot comply with particular standards during a renovation project, a temporary waiver of those standards shall be permitted as determined by the authority having jurisdiction if care and safety of patients and other building occupants will not be jeopardized as a result.

1.1-3.2 Facilities Subject to Compliance with the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*

1.1-3.2.1 Affected Areas

In renovation projects and additions to existing facilities, only that portion of the total facility affected by the project shall be required to comply with applicable sections of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

1.1-3.2.2 Unaffected Areas

Existing portions of the facility and associated building systems that are not included in a renovation project but are essential to the functionality or code compliance of the renovated spaces shall, at minimum, comply with the applicable occupancy chapter of ~~NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*~~ life safety codes.

~~**1.1-3.3 Long-Range Improvement**~~

~~Nothing in the *Guidelines* shall be construed as prohibiting a facility from making upgrades or alterations as part of a phased long-range safety improvement plan.~~

~~**1.1-4 Government Regulations**~~

~~The government regulations listed in this section shall be reviewed for applicability to each outpatient facility project.~~

~~**1.1-4.1 Design Standards for Accessibility**~~

~~**1.1-4.2 Regulations for Earthquake-Resistant Design for New Buildings**~~

~~**1.1-4.3 Flood Protection**~~

~~**1.1-4.4 National Standards for the Protection of Patient Health Information**~~

~~**1.1-4.5 Environmental Regulations**~~

~~**1.1-4.5.1 Federal Environmental Regulations**~~

~~**1.1-4.5.2 State and Local Environmental Regulations**~~

1.1-5 Building Codes and Standards

1.1-5.1 Safe Environment

Every outpatient facility shall provide and maintain a safe environment for patients, staff, and the public.

1.1-5.2 Code Compliance

1.1-5.2.1 In the absence of state or local requirements, the project shall comply with approved nationally recognized building codes except as modified in the latest edition of NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code* and/or herein.

1.1-5.2.2 Code material referred to in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* is contained in the edition of the referenced code current when this edition of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* was published.

1.1-6 Equivalency Concepts

~~**1.1-6.1** Although the *Guidelines* is adopted as a regulatory standard by many jurisdictions, it is the intent of the document to permit and promote equivalency concepts.~~

~~**1.1-6.2**~~ Nothing in this document shall be construed as restricting innovations that provide an equivalent level of performance with these standards, provided that no other safety element or system is compromised to establish equivalency.

~~**1.1-7 English/Metric Measurements**~~

~~**1.1-7.1** Where measurements are a part of this document, the English units given shall constitute the basic requirement. Approximately equivalent metric units are provided in parentheses after the English units.~~

~~**1.1-7.2** Either method shall be consistently used throughout design and construction of a project.~~

1.1-7 New or Alternate Concepts

Use of new or alternate concepts shall be permitted when the requesting organization demonstrates an equal or higher operational goal is achieved, and safety is not compromised.

1.1-8 Codes, Standards, Documents, and Tools Referenced in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*

1.1-8.1 Listed in this section are codes and standards that have been referenced in whole or in part in the various sections of this document as well as documents and tools from which *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* concepts have been adopted.

1.1-8.2 Users of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* are encouraged to consult these publications for further information as may be necessary to achieve the final product. The editions cited are those available at the time of publication. Later editions will normally be acceptable where requirements for function and safety are not reduced; however, editions of different dates may have portions renumbered or retitled. Care must be taken to ensure that appropriate sections are used.

[**COMMENT PERIOD NOTE:** List of publications in Section 1.1-8 are not shown in the draft. This list will be finalized before publication of the 2026 edition.]

1.2 Planning, Design, Construction, and Commissioning

1.2-1 General

1.2-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all outpatient facility projects.

1.2-1.2 Multidisciplinary Project Team ~~Planning and Predesign Process~~

~~**1.2-1.2.1 Project Team**~~

1.2-1.2.1~~**.1**~~ Multidisciplinary groups/persons (stakeholders) affected by and integral to a project and its design shall be included throughout the project development and implementation process.

1.2-1.2.2 Health care organizations that develop designs to be applied to multiple locations across the organization shall do so with stakeholder input.

1.2-1.2.3 ~~**1.2 1.2.1.2**~~ The scope and nature of the project shall dictate the diversity of the multidisciplinary team.

1.2-1.3 Environment of Care and Facility Function Considerations

~~**1.2 1.3.1 Framework for Outpatient Facility Design**~~

~~**1.2 1.3.1.1** Because the built environment has a profound effect on health, productivity, and the natural environment, outpatient facilities shall be designed within a framework that recognizes the primary mission of health care (including "first, do no harm") and that considers the larger context of enhanced patient environment, employee effectiveness, and resource stewardship.~~

~~**1.2 1.3.1.2**~~ Outpatient facility planning, design, construction, and commissioning activities shall include—in addition to consideration of space and operational needs—consideration of components in the safety risk assessment as well as the environment of care, life safety, and protection of occupants during construction.

1.2-2 Functional Program

1.2-2.1 General

1.2-2.1.1 Functional Program Purpose

The primary purpose of the functional program shall be to communicate the governing body's intent for the project to the designers of record as a basis of design at the initiation of the project.

1.2-2.1.1.1 The functional program shall be used to determine the application of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* when developing facility projects.

1.2-2.1.1.2 The facility shall retain the functional program with other design data to facilitate future alterations, additions, and program changes.

1.2-2.1.1.3 Determining clinical room need. Types and numbers of clinical service rooms (e.g., exam, procedure, operating room) required for a project as well as anticipated clinical activity to be performed in each type of room shall be determined by the owner and the clinical team during the functional programming process.

1.2-2.1.2 Functional Program Requirement

1.2-2.1.2.1 The governing body shall be responsible for having a functional program developed, documented, and updated.

1.2-2.1.2.2 A functional program shall be developed for new construction, major renovations, and projects that change the functional use of any outpatient facility space.

(1) The functional program shall be completed as part of the project planning phase and updated, as needed, throughout the design and construction phases.

(2) Following its approval, the functional program shall serve as the basis for the project design and construction documents.

1.2-2.1.2.3 Activities such as equipment replacement, fire safety upgrades, or minor renovations that will not change the facility's function or character shall not require a functional program.

1.2-2.1.3 Nomenclature in the Functional Program

1.2-2.1.3.1 The names for spaces used in the functional program shall be consistent with those used in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*. If acronyms are used, they shall be clearly defined.

1.2-2.1.3.2 The names and spaces indicated in the functional program also shall be consistent with those used on submitted floor plans.

1.2-2.2 Functional Program Content

The functional program for a project shall include the following:

1.2-2.2.1 Functional Program Executive Summary

An executive summary ~~of the key elements of the functional program~~ shall be provided and, at minimum, shall include the key elements of the functional program outlined below ~~information outlined in Section 1.2-2.2 (Functional Program Content)~~ in a project narrative.

1.2-2.2.2 Purpose of the Project

~~The governing body's overall project requirements and scope, including the s~~Services to be provided, expanded, or eliminated by the proposed project shall be described.

~~**1.2-2.2.3 Functional Requirements**~~

~~**1.2-2.2.3.1 Project components and scope.** How the project components meet the governing body's operational needs and objectives, commensurate with the scope and purpose of the project, shall be described.~~

~~(1) The services required for the completed project to function as intended shall be described.~~

~~(2) The clinical and support areas affected by the project shall be identified.~~

1.2-2.2.3.2 Indirect support functions. Increased (or decreased) demands, workloads, staffing requirements, etc., imposed on support functions affected by the project shall be described.

1.2-2.2.3.3 Operational requirements. The operational requirements, which include but are not limited to the following, shall be described:

(1) Projected operational use for project components

(2) A verbal or diagrammatic description of key functional adjacencies and ~~Relevant~~ operational circulation patterns, including movement of staff, patients and their companions, members of the public, and materials and equipment

(3) Operational relationships and required adjacencies

1.2-2.2.4 Project Type ~~and Size~~

1.2-2.2.4.1 The type of outpatient facility(s) proposed for the project shall be identified as defined by the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

~~**1.2-2.2.4.2** Project size in square footage (new construction and/or renovation) and number of stories shall be provided.~~ [Relocated to space program section (1.2-3.3.2)]

1.2-2.2.5 Construction Type/Occupancy and Building Systems

1.2-2.2.5.1 New construction. If the proposed project is new construction that is not dependent on or attached to an existing structure, the following shall be included:

(1) A description of construction type(s) for the proposed project

(2) A description of proposed occupancy(ies) and, if applicable, existing occupancy(ies)

(3) A description of proposed engineering and technology systems.

1.2-2.2.5.2 Renovation. For a project that is a renovation of, or addition to, an existing building, the following shall be included in the project narrative:

(1) A description of the existing construction type and construction type for any proposed renovations or additions

(3) A description of exiting occupancy(ies) and proposed occupancy(ies) for renovations or additions

(3)(2) A general description of existing engineering and technology systems serving the area of the building affected by the proposed project

1.2-3 Space Program

1.2-3.1 General

A space program shall be provided that contains a list organized by department or other functional unit that shows each room in the proposed project, indicating its size ~~by gross floor area and clear floor area and citing relevant section number(s) from this document~~.

1.2-3.2 Space Requirements

Where minimum square footages and clearances for rooms in the proposed project are required in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*, they shall be provided in the space program.

1.2-3.3 *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* Citations

1.2-3.3.1 The relevant *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* section numbers indicating space requirements shall be cited.

1.2-3.3.2 Project size in square footage (new construction and/or renovation) and number of stories shall be provided. [Relocated from 1.2-2.2.4.2]

1.2-4 Safety Risk Assessment (SRA)

1.2-4.1 General

1.2-4.1.1 SRA Requirement

1.2-4.1.1.1 All outpatient facility projects shall be designed and constructed to facilitate the safe delivery of care.

1.2-4.1.1.2 ~~To support this goal~~ In the absence of established safety risk and mitigation standards/policies of the health care organization, a multidisciplinary team shall develop a safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.1.1.3 Safety risk and mitigation standards shall demonstrate compliance with any or all elements of the safety risk assessment. The documentation shall demonstrate how it meets the intent or objective of any or all of sections 1.2-4.2 through 1.2-4.8.

1.2-4.1.1.4 A copy of this SRA shall accompany project review submission where required by the authority having jurisdiction.

1.2-4.1.2 SRA Components

See Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components) to determine if the following SRA components are required for a project.

1.2-4.1.2.1 Infection control risk assessment (ICRA)

1.2-4.1.2.2 Patient handling and mobility assessment (PHAMA)

1.2-4.1.2.3 Fall prevention assessment

1.2-4.1.2.4 Medication safety assessment

1.2-4.1.2.5 Behavioral and mental health risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.6 Security risk assessment

1.2-4.1.2.7 Disaster, emergency, and vulnerability assessment (DEVA)

1.2-4.1.3 SRA Responsibility and Scope

1.2-4.1.3.1 The safety risk assessment shall be initiated and managed by the governing body during the planning phase of the project.

1.2-4.1.3.2 The safety risk assessment shall evolve with additional levels of detail as needed to support the creation of a safe environment throughout the design, construction, and commissioning phases of a project.

1.2-4.1.4 SRA Team

The governing body of the health care organization shall appoint a multidisciplinary team to conduct the safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.1.4.1 The SRA team shall be convened as needed to maintain continuity and integration of the SRA components.

1.2-4.1.4.2 Individual members shall be engaged to develop additional detail according to their areas of expertise.

1.2-4.1.5 SRA Process

1.2-4.1.5.1 Identify hazards. The governing body shall provide an assessment of the potential hazards to patients, caregivers, and other users specific to each part of the project. This assessment shall consist of the components listed in Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components).

1.2-4.1.5.2 Evaluate risks from identified hazards. The SRA team shall evaluate underlying conditions that contribute to an unsafe environment for the categories listed in Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components) and estimate associated risk considering the following:

(1) Likelihood (vulnerability), using historical data and/or national patient and caregiver safety trends relevant to the identified hazards

(2) Consequence (estimated degree of potential harm to patients and/or caregivers from identified hazards)

1.2-4.1.5.3 Generate solutions. The SRA team shall document proposed solutions that mitigate risks from the identified hazards.

1.2-4.1.6 SRA Report

After completing the SRA process, the governing body shall provide the following information and recommendations, which shall be incorporated into the planning and design documentation:

1.2-4.1.6.1 Patient and caregiver safety hazards and risks identified by the safety risk assessment~~. See Section~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-4.1.5.1 (Identify hazards).

1.2-4.1.6.2 Design features that contribute to the identified hazards and risks~~.~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-4.1.5.2 (Evaluate risks from identified hazards).

1.2-4.1.6.3 Design strategies to reduce, mitigate, or eliminate identified hazards and risks~~.~~in accordance with Section 1.2-4.1.5.3 (Generate solutions).

1.2-4.1.7 SRA Compliance

1.2-4.1.7.1 SRA documentation

(1) Written records shall remain an active part of the project documents for the duration of design, construction, and commissioning.

(2) The records shall include the SRA recommendations report and any documentation completed as part of the SRA process.

1.2-4.1.7.2 SRA communication

(1) The SRA team shall provide updates to the planners and designers for compliance with additional levels of detail generated during the project for all safety components listed in Table 1.2-1 (Safety Risk Assessment Components).

(2) Changes to the original design plans shall be documented, updated, and continually shared between the SRA team and the designers, planners, governing body, and contractor.

1.2-4.2 Infection Control Risk Assessment (ICRA)

1.2-4.2.1 General

1.2-4.2.1.1 ICRA requirement. For an outpatient facility project to support safe designs, HVAC/plumbing systems, and surface and furnishing material selections, an infection control risk assessment shall be a part of integrated facility planning, design, construction, and commissioning activities and shall be incorporated into the safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.2.1.2 ICRA recommendations. Based on the results of the initial stage of the ICRA, the governing body shall provide the following recommendations for incorporation into the safety risk assessment:

(1) Design recommendations generated by the ICRA

(2) Infection control risk mitigation recommendations (ICRMRs) for construction and commissioning~~.~~ ~~See~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-4.2.3.1 (Infection control risk mitigation recommendations).

~~**1.2-4.2.2 ICRA Considerations**~~

~~At minimum, the ICRA shall address the following:~~

~~**1.2-4.2.2.1 Design elements**~~

(3)~~(1)~~ Airborne infection isolation (AII) rooms

(a) ~~Where an AII room(s) is required in the facility type chapters in the Outpatient *Guidelines*, the~~ Other than where an AII room(s) is required in the facility type chapters in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*, the need, number, and location of these rooms shall be determined by the ICRA.

(b) Whether an anteroom is to be provided for each AII room shall be determined by the ICRA.

(4)~~(2)~~ Special heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) needs required to accommodate the services (e.g., surgical suites, AII rooms, laboratories, pharmacies, areas with local exhaust systems for hazardous agents, and other special areas) performed in spaces included in or affected by the project shall be addressed in the ICRA.

(5)~~(3)~~ Water/plumbing systems

(a) The minimum number, location, and type of plumbed handwashing stations, hand sanitation dispensers, and emergency first-aid equipment (e.g., eyewash stations and deluge showers) are identified in the facility chapters in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*. The need for additional fixtures shall be addressed in the ICRA.

(b) The ICRA shall include an assessment of the risk from transmissible waterborne pathogens and establish strategies to mitigate the risk.

(6)~~(4)~~ Characteristics related to infection prevention for selection of materials for surfaces and furnishings shall be addressed in the ICRA.

1.2-4.2.2.2 Construction elements. For building and site areas anticipated to be affected by construction, an ICRA shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1.2-4.2.3 (Infection Control Risk Mitigation and shall address the following: ~~When conducting the ICRA and developing infection control risk mitigation recommendations (see Section 1.2-4.2.3) for building and site areas anticipated to be affected by construction, the following shall be addressed:~~

(1) The impact of disrupting essential services to patients and employees

(2) The specific hazards and protection levels for each designated area

(3) Location of patients according to their susceptibility to infection and the definition of risks to each

(4) The impact of movement of debris, traffic flow, spill cleanup, and testing and certification of installed systems

(5) Assessment of external as well as internal construction activities

(6) Location of known hazards

1.2-4.2.3 Infection Control Risk Mitigation

1.2-4.2.3.1 Infection control risk mitigation recommendations (ICRMRs). These written plans shall describe the specific methods by which transmission of airborne and waterborne biological contaminants will be avoided during construction as well as during commissioning, when HVAC and plumbing systems and equipment (e.g., ice machines, steam sterilization systems) are started/restarted.

1.2-4.2.3.2 ICRMR planning. ICRMRs shall be prepared by the ICRA team.

1.2-4.2.3.3 ICRMR content. ICRMRs shall, at minimum, indicate how the following issues will be addressed during construction:

(1) Patient proximity to construction activities and potential need for patient relocation

(2) Standards for barriers and other protective measures required to protect adjacent areas and susceptible patients from airborne contaminants

(3) Temporary provisions or phasing for construction or modification of HVAC and water supply systems

(4) Protection from demolition

(5) Training for staff, visitors, and construction personnel

(6) The impact of potential utility outages or emergencies, including the need to protect patients during planned and unplanned utility outages and evacuation

(7) The impact of movement of debris, traffic flow, cleanup, elevator use for construction materials and construction workers, and construction worker routes

(8) Provision for use of bathroom and food facilities by construction workers

(9) Installation of clean materials (particularly ductwork, drywall, and wood/paper/fabric materials) that have not been damaged by water

1.2-4.2.3.4 Monitoring plan and procedures

(1) The governing body shall provide monitoring plans for effective application of ICRMRs during the course of the project.

(2) Provisions for monitoring shall include:

(a) Written procedures for emergency suspension of work

(b) Protective measures indicating the responsibilities and limitations of each party (i.e., governing body, designer, contractor, and monitor)

1.2-4.3 Patient Handling and Mobility Assessment (PHAMA)

1.2-4.3.1 General

1.2-4.3.1.1 PHAMA requirement

(1) The governing body of the outpatient facility shall provide the project design team with a PHAMA that addresses the specific patient handling and mobility needs of all areas affected by a project.

(2) The governing body shall incorporate the findings and recommendations of the PHAMA into the safety risk assessment.

1.2-4.3.1.2 Design recommendations

(1) PHAMA results and recommendations shall be specific to each patient care area and any other area where patient handling and mobility occur.

(2) The findings and recommendations of the PHAMA shall include consideration of the patient care requirements for all patients, including individuals of size.

1.2-4.3.2 Patient Handling and Mobility Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.3.2.1 Phase 1: Patient handling and mobility needs assessment. Evaluation of patient handling and mobility needs shall include at minimum the following considerations:

(1) Patient handling and mobility equipment recommendations, based on the following:

(a) Characteristics of projected patient populations

(b) Types of high-risk patient handling and mobility tasks to be performed

(c) Knowledge of specific technology to enable physical activity by patients and reduce risk for each patient handling and mobility task

(d) Architectural factors that interfere with use of patient handling equipment or impede mobility

(2) Types of patient handling and mobility equipment to be used (e.g., manual or power-assisted fixed ceiling or wall-mounted lifts, manual or power-assisted floor-based sling or sit-to-stand lifts, electric height-adjustable tables, or a combination thereof)

(3) Quantity of each type of patient handling and mobility equipment needed for each area under consideration

(4) Required weight-carrying capacities

(5) Locations/rooms/areas where patient handling and mobility equipment will be used, with installation requirements (if fixed) and storage requirements

1.2-4.3.2.2 Phase 2: Design considerations. The impact of patient handling and mobility needs on building design shall be addressed in the PHAMA, including consideration of the care needs of all patients, including individuals of size. These design considerations shall incorporate results from the Phase 1 assessment and shall include, at minimum, the following:

(1) Structural considerations to accommodate current and/or future use of fixed equipment that supports safe patient handling and mobility

(2) Electrical and mechanical considerations for current and future use and/or installation of patient handling and mobility equipment and associated storage and charging areas

(3) Adequate space for provision of patient care and for unhindered maneuvering of patient handling and mobility equipment. ~~For clearance requirements to~~ Clearances to accommodate care of individuals of size, shall be provided in accordance with ~~see~~ Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

(4) Destination points for patient ambulation, transfers, and transport

(5) Sizes and types of door openings through which patient handling and mobility equipment and accompanying staff must pass. ~~See~~ The requirements in Section 2.1-2.10.2 (Door Openings to Accommodate Individuals of Size) shall apply.~~for additional requirements.~~

(6) Types of floor surfaces and transitions needed to facilitate safe and effective use of patient handling and mobility equipment

(7) Coordination of patient handling and mobility equipment installations with building mechanical, electrical, communication, and life safety systems

(8) Storage space requirements and locations available or to be provided

(9) Impact of the installation and use of patient handling and mobility equipment on environmental characteristics of the environment of care

~~(10) Impact of the installation and use of patient handling and mobility equipment on the aesthetics of the patient care space~~

(10)~~(11)~~ Infection control recommendations

1.2-4.4 Fall Prevention Assessment

1.2-4.4.1 Fall Prevention Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.4.1.1 Fall-risk locations. Fall-risk locations for a new construction or renovation project shall be identified in the SRA report.

1.2-4.4.1.2 Design features. The SRA team shall identify required patient fall prevention design features for the identified at-risk locations. See Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements).

1.2-4.4.2 Fall Prevention Response

1.2-4.4.2.1 The design team shall incorporate required patient fall prevention design features in the project design documents.

1.2-4.4.2.2 For renovation projects, documentation shall describe the specific fall risk mitigation methods to be used in and around construction zones and shall, at minimum, address the following:

(1) Standards for barriers and other protective measures required to protect adjacent areas and susceptible patients from clutter and construction dust on flooring

(2) Protection from demolition debris on flooring

1.2-4.5 Medication Safety Assessment

1.2-4.5.1 Medication Safety Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.5.1.1 Number and location of medication safety zones. The governing body shall identify the number and location of medication safety zones for the project and include them in the SRA report.

1.2-4.5.1.2 Design features. Medication safety zones shall meet the requirements found in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones).

1.2-4.5.2 Medication Safety Response

The design team shall incorporate the required medication safety design features in the project design documents.

1.2-4.6 Behavioral and Mental Health Risk (Patient Injury and Suicide Prevention) Assessment

1.2-4.6.1 Behavioral and Mental Health Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

The SRA report shall identify areas where behavioral and mental health patients at risk of injury and self-harm will be served.

1.2-4.6.2 Behavioral and Mental Health Response

1.2-4.6.2.1 The SRA team shall identify mitigating features for the identified at-risk locations.

1.2-4.6.2.2 The design of behavioral and mental health patient care settings shall address the need for a safe treatment environment for those who may present unique challenges and risks as a result of their mental condition.

(1) This patient environment shall be designed to protect the privacy, dignity, and health of patients and address the potential risks related to patient elopement and harm to self, others, and the care environment.

(2) The design of behavioral and mental health patient areas shall accommodate the need for clinical and security resources.

1.2-4.7 Security Risk Assessment

1.2-4.7.1 Project Security Plan

1.2-4.7.1.1 For new construction or renovation projects, a security plan shall be developed that addresses, at minimum, the following:

(1) ~~r~~Risks from the environment, function of the project space, and the construction process

(2) Entry/intrusion prevention

(3) Workplace violence prevention/response

(4) Theft prevention

1.2-4.7.1.3 In addition to the requirements above, this ~~This~~ plan shall include the following:

(1)~~**1.2-4.7.1.1**~~ A description of the impact of demolition and phasing on existing site functions and any existing protection strategies and design interventions

(2)~~**1.2-4.7.1.2**~~ An assessment of the need for temporary security barriers such as fencing and security systems (e.g., intrusion detection and video surveillance systems)

(3)~~**1.2-4.7.1.3**~~ A schedule for installation of security systems for completion during move-in activities to allow for protection of the facility and equipment

1.2-4.7.2 Security Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

Design features shall address identified security risks specific to the patient population to be served and environmental factors related to the project scope.

1.2-4.8 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Assessment (DEVA)

1.2-4.8.1 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Elements of the Safety Risk Assessment

1.2-4.8.1.1 Anticipated hazards

(1) The multidisciplinary SRA team shall review the organization's hazard vulnerability assessment (HVA) in conjunction with the development of the DEVA.

(2) The DEVA shall identify anticipated hazards specific to a facility based on its geographic location.

1.2-4.8.1.2 Design features. Design features that provide resilience, hardening, flexibility, and adaptability during a disaster or emergency event shall be identified.

1.2-4.8.2 Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Response

The design team shall incorporate identified disaster and emergency-related design features in the project design documents.

1.2-5 Environment of Care Requirements

In addition to the functional requirements of the space being designed, the following components and key elements of the physical environment shall be evaluated during project planning and design. The evaluation and subsequent impact (if any) shall be documented.

1.2-5.1 Delivery of Care Model Concepts

1.2-5.1.1 A description of the delivery of care model shall be provided.

1.2-5.1.2 A description of the physical elements and key functional relationships necessary to support the intended delivery of care model shall also be provided.

1.2-5.2 Patients, Visitors, Physicians, and Staff Accommodations and Flow

Design criteria shall be described for the layout and design of the physical environment necessary to support operational efficiencies and facilitate ease of use by patients and their companions, members of the public, and clinicians and support staff (e.g., travel paths, waiting areas or rooms, desired amenities, and separation of users and workflow).

1.2-5.3 Building Infrastructure and Systems Design

Design criteria for the physical environment necessary to support organizational, technological, and building systems that facilitate the delivery of care model shall be described.

1.2-5.4 Physical Environment Elements

~~Descriptions of and/or design criteria for the following shall be provided:~~

1.2-5.4.1 Light

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ the use and availability of natural light and illumination are to be considered in the design of the physical environment shall be provided.

1.2-5.4.2 Views of and Access to Nature

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ the use and availability of views and other access to nature are to be considered in the design of the physical environment shall be provided.

1.2-5.4.3 Wayfinding

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ clarity of access will be provided for the entire campus or facility using a wayfinding system shall be provided. ~~See Section 1.2-6.3 (Planning and Design Considerations—Wayfinding) for more information.~~

1.2-5.4.4 User Control of Environment

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~, by what means, and to what extent users of the finished project will be able to control their environment shall be provided.

1.2-5.4.5 Privacy and Confidentiality

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ privacy and confidentiality for users of the finished project are to be protected shall be provided.

1.2-5.4.6 Security

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ the safety and security of patients, staff, and visitors are to be addressed in the overall planning of the facility shall be provided.

1.2-5.4.7 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Built-In Furnishings

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for characteristics ~~Characteristics~~ and criteria for use in selecting materials and products for architectural details, surfaces, and built-in furnishings

1.2-5.4.8 Cultural Responsiveness

Descriptions of and/or design criteria for how~~How~~ the project addresses and/or responds to the diverse background and culture of patients, staff, and visitors, as well as the culture of the organization.

1.2-6 Planning and Design Considerations and Requirements

1.2-6.1 Acoustic Design

1.2-6.1.1 General

1.2-6.1.1.1 The planning and design of new outpatient facilities and the retrofitting of existing outpatient facilities shall conform to the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* and all applicable codes and regulations with respect to exterior environmental sound and interior sound within all occupied building spaces.

1.2-6.1.1.2 Acoustic design requirements in Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) shall be reviewed and documented by the project team during the early planning stages of the project.

1.2-6.1.2 Site Exterior Noise

1.2-6.1.2.1 Existing and known planned new exterior noise sources. Planning and design of new facilities and retrofitting of existing facilities shall include due consideration of all existing and known planned new exterior noise sources that may be transmitted from outside a building to its interior through the exterior shell (i.e., exterior walls, windows, doors, roofs, ventilation openings, and other shell penetrations).

1.2-6.1.2.2 Facility noise source emissions. Planning and design shall include due consideration of sound emissions from outpatient facility noise sources that reach nearby residences and other sensitive receptors.

1.2-6.1.3 Design Criteria for Acoustic Surfaces

All normally occupied outpatient facility spaces shall incorporate floor, wall, or ceiling acoustic surfaces that achieve design room average sound absorption coefficients equal to or greater than indicated in Table 1.2-3 (Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients).

1.2-6.1.4 Design Criteria for Room Noise Levels

1.2-6.1.4.1 Room noise levels caused by HVAC and other building systems shall not exceed the maximum values shown in Table 1.2-4 (Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Caused by Building Systems).

1.2-6.1.4.2 Room noise levels shall be determined for the unoccupied room (i.e., without operating medical equipment).

1.2-6.1.5 Design Criteria for Performance of Interior Wall and Floor/Ceiling Constructions

1.2-6.1.5.1 Sound isolation shall be considered for all demising construction separating occupied spaces.

1.2-6.1.5.2 The composite sound transmission class (STC_c) of demising wall assemblies shall not be less than the ratings indicated in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

1.2-6.1.6 Design Guidelines for Speech Privacy

1.2-6.1.6.1 Speech privacy rating methods. Spaces shall be designed to meet speech privacy goals using one of the four speech privacy rating methods as shown in Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces).

1.2-6.1.7 Design Criteria for Building Vibration

1.2-6.1.7.1 General. Seismic restraint covered elsewhere in this document shall be compatible with vibration isolation methods covered in this section.

1.2-6.1.7.2 Vibration control and isolation. Vibration levels in the building shall not exceed applicable guidelines and limits outlined in this section.

(1) Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing equipment vibration

(a) All fixed building equipment that rotates or vibrates shall be considered for vibration isolation.

(b) Equipment bases, isolators, and isolator static deflections shall be selected based on the proximity of the supported equipment to vibration- and noise-sensitive areas, structural design of the facility, and type and operating point of the equipment.

(i) The recommendations in the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications* shall be considered when selecting types of bases, isolators, and isolator static deflections.

(ii) More stringent requirements shall be considered for equipment impacting sensitive areas.

(2) Structural vibration

(a) Footfall vibration in the building structure shall be evaluated using properly substantiated methods of analysis, including:

(i) For steel floor systems: American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) Design Guide 11: *Vibrations of Steel-Framed Structural Systems Due to Human Activity*

(ii) For concrete floor systems: Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) *Design Guide for Vibrations of Reinforced Concrete Floor Systems*

(iii) If neither document in paragraphs (i) and (ii) is applicable, use of finite element analysis (FEA) or modal superposition analysis shall be considered.

(b) ~~The~~ Elevated structural floors shall be designed to avoid footfall vibration levels that exceed the peak vibration velocities in Table 1.2-7 (Maximum Limits on Floor Vibration Caused by Footfalls in Outpatient Facilities).

(c) More stringent vibration criteria shall be considered for locations where medical and laboratory instrumentation sensitive to vibration is housed.

(3) Structure-borne sound

(a) Structure-borne transmitted sound shall not exceed the limits for airborne sound presented in Section 1.2-6.1.4 (Design Criteria for Room Noise Levels).

(b) Where necessary, vibration isolators shall be used to control potential sources of structure-borne sound.

1.2-6.2 Sustainable Design

Sustainable design, construction, and maintenance practices to improve building performance shall be considered in the design and renovation of outpatient facilities.

1.2-6.2.1 Components

The basic components of sustainable design to be considered shall include:

1.2-6.2.1.1 Site selection and development

(1) The site design shall be developed to minimize negative environmental impacts associated with buildings and related site development.

(2) The orientation of buildings on the site shall be evaluated to assess how solar and wind effects can be harnessed to minimize energy consumption.

1.2-6.2.1.2 Waste minimization. The design shall support the minimization of waste in construction and operation and allocate space for recycling activities.

1.2-6.2.1.3 Potable water quality and conservation

(1) Potable water quality and conservation strategies shall be evaluated in all phases of facility development or renovation.

(2) Design for water conservation

(a) Design for water conservation shall not adversely affect patient health, safety, or infection control.

(b) The use of plumbing fixtures with flow rates lower than legally required (i.e., “low-flow fixtures”) shall be prohibited.

~~(3) Plumbing fixtures and fittings for water reduction shall comply with Section 6.3.2.1 (Plumbing Fixtures and Fittings) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 189.3: *Design, Construction, and Operation of Sustainable High-Performance Health Care Facilities*.~~

1.2-6.2.1.4 Energy efficiency. In the absence of a locally adopted energy code, ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, as adopted by the U.S. Department of Energy, shall be used.

1.2-6.2.1.5 Indoor environmental quality

(1) The impact of building design and construction on indoor environmental quality shall be addressed.

(2) Impact from both exterior and interior air-contamination sources shall be minimized.

1.2-6.3 Wayfinding

~~**1.2-6.3.1**~~ An organized approach to wayfinding ~~about the facility~~ shall be provided.

~~**1.2-6.3.2** Signage shall be consistent with all state, local, and federal regulations.~~

1.2-6.4 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

1.2-6.4.1 Projected Need for Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

The need for accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be defined in the planning phase and shall include the following:

1.2-6.4.1.1 Projected weight capacities for individuals of size in the population to be served

1.2-6.4.1.2 Projected number of spaces required to accommodate individuals of size

1.2-6.4.1.3 Projected number of expanded-capacity lifts required

1.2-6.4.2 Design Response for Accommodations for Individuals of Size

1.2-6.4.2.1 The projected maximum weight of individuals of size who will require accommodations shall determine the design requirements for sinks, toilets, grab bars, casework, and lifts in areas where individuals of size will receive care.

1.2-6.4.2.2 Those areas of the facility designated for accommodations for individuals of size, and the associated path of egress to reach these areas, shall be designed with appropriate support and clearances.

~~**1.2-6.5 Emergency Preparedness and Management**~~

~~During project planning and design, the following shall be considered:~~

~~**1.2-6.5.1** The likelihood a facility will experience events that go beyond the facility's normal operations~~

~~**1.2-6.5.2** Space needs in the event of an emergency to accommodate the following operations:~~

~~**1.2-6.5.2.1** Protection of facility occupants during the event~~

~~**1.2-6.5.2.2** Continuous provision of services~~

1.2-6.5 Design Criteria for Inclusive Environments

Provision of inclusive design features shall be considered in the planning and design of patient care areas and staff spaces.

1.2-7 Renovation

1.2-7.1 ~~Phasing~~ Minimizing Disruption of Existing Patient Services

Projects involving renovation of existing buildings shall include ~~phasing to minimize~~ provisions for minimizing disruption of existing patient services.

1.2-7.1.1 Phasing Provisions

~~Phasing p~~Provisions shall include but not be limited to:

1.2-7.1.1.1 Clean-to-dirty airflow

1.2-7.1.1.2 Emergency procedures

1.2-7.1.1.3 Criteria for interruption of protection

1.2-7.1.1.4 Construction of roof surfaces

1.2-7.1.1.5 Written notification of interruptions

1.2-7.1.1.6 Communication authority

1.2-7.1.1.7 Maintenance of minimum air quality and utility requirements in occupied spaces

1.2-7.1.1.8 Noise and vibration

~~**1.2-7.1.2 Noise and Vibration**~~

~~Phasing plans shall include considerations of noise and vibration control during construction activities.~~

1.2-7.2 Isolation of Construction Areas

During construction, renovation areas shall be isolated from occupied areas based on the ICRA~~; see~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-4.2 (Infection Control Risk Assessment).

~~**1.2-7.3 Maintenance of Air Quality and Utilities**~~

~~Existing air quality requirements and utility requirements for occupied areas shall be maintained during any renovation or construction.~~

~~**1.2-7.4**~~ **1.2-7.3 Existing Conditions**

Existing conditions and operations shall be documented prior to initiation of renovation and new construction projects. This shall include documentation of existing mechanical/electrical/structural capacities and quantities.

1.2-8 Commissioning

1.2-8.1 Commissioning Requirements

On projects involving installation of new or modification to existing physical environment elements critical to patient care and safety or facility energy use, at minimum the following systems shall be commissioned:

1.2-8.1.1 HVAC

1.2-8.1.2 Automatic temperature control

1.2-8.1.3 Domestic hot water

1.2-8.1.4 Fire alarm and fire protection systems (integration with other systems)

1.2-8.1.5 Essential electrical power systems

1.2-8.1.6 Security systems

1.2-8.1.7 Telecommunication systems

1.2-8.1.8 Wireless communication systems

1.2-8.2 Commissioning Activities

At minimum, the following commissioning activities shall be undertaken:

1.2-8.2.1 Development of the Owner's Project Requirements (OPR)

The governing body (i.e., the owner) shall develop the OPR.

1.2-8.2.1.1 The OPR shall identify the building systems and elements to be commissioned as part of the project scope.

1.2-8.2.1.2 The OPR shall define the parameters required to meet the owner's expectations, including the following:

(1) Performance

(2) Operations

(3) Maintenance

(4) Longevity

(5) Energy efficiency

1.2-8.2.2 Preparation of the Basis of Design (BOD)

In response to the OPR, the design team shall prepare a BOD narrative describing the design intent and systems to be commissioned. The BOD narrative shall include, at minimum, the following elements:

1.2-8.2.2.1 Description of the systems, components, and methods used to meet the OPR

1.2-8.2.2.2 Diversity and safety factors used in sizing

1.2-8.2.2.3 Classes of systems and components planned (e.g., duct class, clean room class)

1.2-8.2.2.4 Levels of redundancy planned

1.2-8.2.2.5 Occupant density anticipated

1.2-8.2.2.6 Limitations and restrictions of systems and assemblies assumed

1.2-8.2.2.7 Indoor and outdoor conditions assumed (e.g., space temperature, relative humidity, lighting power density, glazing fraction, U-value and shading coefficient, wall and ceiling R-values, ventilation and infiltration rates)

1.2-8.2.2.8 Description of emergency operation intended

1.2-8.2.3 Preparation of Commissioning Plan, Commissioning Specifications, and Construction Checklists

1.2-8.2.3.1 Commissioning plan. This document shall establish the scope, structure, and schedule of the commissioning activities and address how the commissioning process will verify that the OPR and the BOD are achieved.

1.2-8.2.3.2 Commissioning specifications. These specifications shall establish requirements for physical environment elements to be included in the project scope and identify responsibilities related to commissioning.

1.2-8.2.3.3 Construction checklists. These documents shall establish inspections and individual component tests that will be used to verify proper functioning of physical environment elements that have been installed or modified.

1.2-8.2.4 Performance of Functional/Operational Tests

Tests of the dynamic function and operation of the physical environment elements under full operation shall be performed. Elements shall be tested in ~~various~~ all modes and run through all sequences of operation.

1.2-8.2.5 Preparation of the Commissioning Report

A commissioning report shall be prepared and presented to the owner to formally document the following:

1.2-8.2.5.1 Performance of the physical environment elements

1.2-8.2.5.2 Performance issues identified

1.2-8.2.5.3 Mitigation or resolution of performance issues

1.2-8.2.5.4 Maintenance staff training to achieve operational sustainability

1.2-8.2.5.5 Compliance with the OPR and the BOD

1.2-8.3 Commissioning Agent

Commissioning shall be led by any of the following as determined by the governing body:

1.2-8.3.1 An independent commissioning agent with health care facility experience and expertise

1.2-8.3.2 The design engineer

1.2-8.3.3 Another qualified individual capable of performing commissioning

1.2-9 Record ~~Drawings and Manuals~~Documents

~~1.2-9.1 Drawings~~

~~1.2-9.1.1 Record Drawings~~

Upon occupancy of the building or a portion thereof, the owner shall be provided with a complete set of record documents that shows construction, fixed equipment, and mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and structural systems and reflects known deviations from the permitted construction documents.

1.2-9.1~~.2~~ Life Safety Overlay

~~Drawings shall include a life safety plan that reflects NFPA 101 requirements for each floor.~~

1.2-9.1.1 Drawings shall be furnished demonstrating how the facility complies with applicable life safety codes.

1.2-9.1.2 Drawings shall include at a minimum ratings of all fire and smoke partitions, exit access points, and travel distances to exit access points.

1.2-9.2 Equipment Information

1.2-9.2.1 Upon completion of the contract, the owner shall be furnished with the following for each piece of equipment installed as part of the project:

1.2-9.2.1.1 A complete set of manufacturers' operations, maintenance, and preventive maintenance instructions

1.2-9.2.1.2 Parts list

1.2-9.2.1.3 Model number and a description

1.2-9.2.2 Operating staff shall be provided with instructions on how to properly operate installed systems and equipment.

1.2-9.3 Design Data

~~The owner shall receive a complete set of design data for the facility, including the following:~~ The following, if applicable to the project, shall be provided:

1.2-9.3.1 Structural design loadings

~~**1.2-9.3.2** Summary of heat loss assumption and calculations~~

1.2-9.3.2 Record copies of energy compliance certifications/attestations required by applicable codes

1.2-9.3.3 Estimated water consumption

1.2-9.3.4 Medical gas outlet and vacuum inlet list

1.2-9.3.5 List of applicable codes

1.2-9.3.6 Electric power requirements of installed equipment

Table 1.2-1: Safety Risk Assessment (SRA) Components

Component	Facility Type/Area	Project Scope	FGI *Code* Reference
Infection control risk assessment (ICRA)	All	1. New construction 2. All renovations	1.2-4.2
Patient handling and mobility assessment (PHAMA)	Areas where patient handling, transport, transfer, and mobilization occur	1. New construction 2. Major renovation and renovations changing functional use of space 3. Minor and minimal renovations where patient handling occurs	1.2-4.3
Fall prevention assessment	Any area to which a patient or family member has access	1. New construction 2. Major renovation and renovations changing functional use of space 3. Minor and minimal renovations where patient falls may occur	1.2-4.4
Medication safety assessment	Medication safety zones	1. New construction 2. Major renovation and renovations changing functional use of space 3. Minor and minimal renovations where medication preparation, processing, and distribution occurs	1.2-4.5
Behavioral and mental health risk assessment	Any area where behavioral and mental health patient care is provided	1. New construction 2. Major renovation and renovations changing functional use of space to include care of behavioral and mental health patients 3. Minor and minimal renovations where behavioral and mental health patient treatment occurs	1.2-4.6
Security risk assessment	All	1. New construction 2. All renovations	1.2-4.7
Disaster, emergency, and vulnerability assessment (DEVA)	All	1. New construction 2. All renovations	1.2-4.8

Table 1.2-2: Infection Control Risk Considerations for Building Systems, Surfaces, and Furnishings

Design Element	Facility Type/Room Type	FGI *Code* Section or Other Reference
HVAC systems		
	Outpatient surgery facilities Endoscopy facilities	Part 3 (ASHRAE 170)
	Imaging facilities with Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms Infusion centers Renal dialysis centers	Part 3 (ASHRAE 170) for room types listed in Table 8-1: Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces
	General and specialty medical services facilities Birth centers Urgent care centers Imaging facilities with Class 1 imaging rooms Outpatient psychiatric centers Outpatient rehabilitation facilities	State and local building codes
	Dental facilities	Part 3 (ASHRAE 170) for rooms where anesthesia is provided
Water/Plumbing Systems		
Hand scrub facilities (scrub sinks)	Outpatient facilities	~~2.1-3.5.2.3~~[update], 2.1-3.8.6, 2.1-8.4.3.6
Handwashing stations and hand sanitation dispensers	Outpatient facilities	2.1-2.5, ~~2.1-3.5.2.3~~[update], 2.1-3.8.7, 2.1-8.4.3.2
Ice-making equipment	Outpatient facilities	2.1-3.8.10, 2.1-8.4.3.4
Potable water supply systems	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.2.3
Heated potable water distribution systems	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.2.5
Drainage systems (piping, floor drains, condensate drains)	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.2.6
Showers and tubs	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.3.3
Clinical sinks	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.3.5
Emergency eyewash and emergency shower stations	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.3.8
Hydrotherapy facilities	Outpatient facilities	2.1-8.4.3.9
Hemodialysis water distribution	Renal dialysis centers	2.10-8.4.1.2
Hemodialysis water treatment equipment area	Renal dialysis centers	2.10-8.4.2
Surfaces and Furnishings		
Surfaces	Outpatient facilities	2.1-7.2.3
Surfaces	Renal dialysis centers	Based on the ICRA
Furnishings	Outpatient facilities	2.1-7.2.4

The purpose of this table is to help infection preventionists quickly locate design requirements for common ICRA-based rooms, building systems, and surfaces and furnishings. The table is not intended to include all areas of an outpatient facility that will be impacted by the ICRA, nor is it meant to indicate location requirements.

Table 1.2-3: Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients ($\overline{\alpha}$)

Space[1]	Design Coefficient[2]
Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas	
Exam room	0.20
Treatment room	0.20
Procedure room	0.20[3]
Class 2 imaging room	0.20
Operating room	—[3]
Class 3 imaging room	—[3]
Support Areas	
Telemedicine room	0.20
Medication safety zone	0.20[4]
Multipurpose/conference room	0.20
Public Areas	
Waiting area (near patient care areas)	0.25
Corridor (near patient care areas[5])	0.20
Atrium	0.10
Administrative Areas	
Office	0.20

[1]Additional spaces shall be added based on the functional program.

[2]Use the noise reduction coefficient (NRC) rating for estimating the design room-average sound absorption coefficient when using this table.

[3]Endoscopy procedure rooms are not required to meet these requirements.

[4]Pharmacy clean/sterile compounding rooms are not required to meet these requirements.

[5]Near patient care areas means the space is directly connected to the doors that open into patient care rooms. When the Waiting Area or Corridor are separated by a partition from patient areas the acceptable average sound absorption performance is 0.15.

Note: If a sound-absorbing panel is attached using mechanical means, that surface is considered permanent.

Table 1.2-4: Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Caused by Building Systems[1]

Room Type	NC [2, 3]	dBA	dBC
Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas			
Multiple-occupant patient care area	45	50	65
Exam/treatment room	40	45	65
Procedure room	40	45	65
Class 2 imaging room	40	45	65
Operating room	50	55	70
Class 3 imaging room	50	55	60
Telemedicine room	30	35	60
Support Areas			
Medication safety zone	40	45	65
Testing/research lab, minimal speech	55	60	75
Research lab, extensive speech	50	55	70
Group teaching lab	45	50	65
Public Areas			
Corridors and public areas	45	50	65
Conference room	35	40	60
Teleconferencing room	25	30	55
Auditorium, large lecture room	30	35	60
Administrative Areas			
Private office	40	45	65

[1]Additional spaces shall be added based on the building program.

[2]See *Sound & Vibration 2.0*: *Design for Health Care Facilities* for a discussion of room noise rating criteria.

[3]Spaces shall be designed to fall below the maximum values shown in this table with no rattles or tonal characteristics.

Table 1.2-5: Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms[1, 2]

Adjacency Combination		STC_c[3]
Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas		
Exam room	Corridor (with entrance)	35[4]
Exam room	Exam room (with electronic masking)	40[5]
Exam room	Exam room (no electronic masking)	50
Exam room	Public space	50
Exam room	MRI room	60[6]
Treatment room	Corridor (with entrance)	35[4]
Treatment room	Treatment room	50
Procedure room	Corridor (with entrance)	35[4]
Procedure room	Procedure room	50
Operating room	Operating room	50
Operating room	MRI room	60[6, 7]
Consultation room	Corridor (with entrance)	35[4]
Consultation room	Public space	50
Telemedicine room	Public space, office, consultation, treatment, exam, and patient room	55
Telemedicine room	Corridor (with entrance)	40[8]
Telemedicine room	MRI scanner room	60
Quiet room[9]		
Public Areas		
Toilet room	Public space	45
Public space	MRI room	50

[1]This table shall not be applied to mobile/transportable medical units.

[2]Additional spaces shall be added based on the building program.

[3]The STC_c values stated assume the need for normal speech privacy as shown in Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces)—except at corridor walls with doors—and a background sound level of at least 30 dBA. When selecting assemblies based on their tested or published STC ratings, it should be noted that laboratory STC test reports can, in general, be considered accurate to +/- 2 STC points. Consequently, an assembly with a tested or published STC rating as low as 2 points below the stated minimum may be considered acceptable.

[4]This is the performance required for the wall assembly note including ~~around~~ the door; this could include relines, cabinets, and other accessories in this composite assembly. Note that sound isolation in these instances will be limited by the door's performance (e.g., STC 20 for a close-fitted 5-PSF door). It is up to the health care organization to determine if doors require a higher acoustic performance or if full perimeter gasketing and bottom seals should be required. Doors are not required to be sound sealed to

maintain the STC rating, although an organization may choose to do so for specialty patient environments (e.g., consultation rooms).

[5]Electronic masking shall provide a maximum background level of 48 dBA.

[6]Relaxation of STC_c 60 ratings shall be permitted if compliance with room noise requirements is achieved with lower performance constructions. See Table 1.2-4 (Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Caused by Building Systems).

[7]This requirement is for operating rooms without doors directly communicating with the MRI scanner room. However, where there is a connecting door, attention shall be paid to the door to assure sound isolation when the MRI is used independently from the operating room.

[8]Full door seals shall be in place on telemedicine room doors.

[9]Quiet rooms do not have a minimum sound isolation requirement, though it is recommended that quiet room walls have a minimum rating of STCc 35 adjacent to a corridor and STCc 45 adjacent to other rooms in the table. A solid core door with a perimeter sound seal at the bottom should be considered.

Table 1.2-6: Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces[1, 2]

Level	Metrics			
Speech Privacy—Closed Plan	**PI**	**AI**	**SII[2]**	**SPC**
Secure	—	—	—	>70
Confidential	— ~~≥95~~	— ~~≤0.05~~	≤0.10	60–69
Normal	— ~~80–94~~	— ~~0.06–0.20~~	0.11–0.25	52–59
Defining standard	— ~~ASTM E1130~~	— ~~ASTM E1130~~	ANSI S3.5	ASTM E2638
Speech Privacy—Open Plan	**PI**	**AI**	**SII[2]**	**SPC[3]**
Confidential	Special consideration required[4 3]			
Normal	80–94	0.06–0.20	0.11–0.25	—
Marginal	60–79	0.21–0.40	0.26–0.45	—
Defining standard	ASTM E1130	ASTM E1130	ANSI S3.5	—

[1]The indicated AI and SII values shall be considered the maximum accepted values. The indicated PI and SPC values shall be considered the minimum accepted values.

[2]When evaluating Speech Intelligibility Index (SII) for closed-plan spaces follow the test methods defined in ASTM E263. When SII is evaluated for open-plan spaces, follow the test methods defined in ASTM E1130.

~~[2]Equivalence among these metrics, as indicated, is correlative. Some of the metrics may not be suitable for a particular space. The referenced standards indicate that PI and AI are appropriate for use in open-plan spaces and that SPC is appropriate for closed-plan spaces. The referenced standard for SII indicates it may be used for either type of space.~~

~~[3]SPC does not apply to open-plan spaces.~~

[3 4]Achieving confidential speech privacy in open-plan spaces may be difficult due to the lack of barriers, low ambient sound levels, increased occupant density, reduced occupant separation, and typical speech levels.

Table 1.2-7: Maximum Limits on Floor Vibration Caused by Footfalls in Outpatient Facilities

Space Type	Structural Framing Footfall Vibration Peak Velocity (micro-in/s)
Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas	
Exam room	8000
Treatment room	8000
Class 1 imaging room	8000
Procedure room	4000
Class 2 imaging room	4000
Operating room	4000
Class 3 imaging room	4000
Public and Administrative Areas	
Administrative areas	8000
Public circulation areas	8000

Lower vibration limits could be required by the manufacturer of vibration-sensitive equipment for services performed in specialty exam rooms [see Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (2)(c) (Single-patient exam room for specialty clinical services)]; such limits shall be considered during structural design.

Notes

1. Higher vibration criteria are less stringent.
2. The vibration criteria in this table do not apply to renovation projects unless new equipment being installed has more stringent vibration limits.
3. The vibration criteria in this table do not apply to mobile/transportable medical units.

1.3 Site

1.3-1 General

1.3-1.1 Application

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all outpatient facility projects.

1.3-2 Location

1.3-2.1 Availability of Transportation

Where site design is part of the project scope, building and parking locations, adjacencies, and access points shall be integrated with on-site and off-site vehicular and pedestrian patterns and transportation services.

1.3-2.2 Security

Outpatient facilities shall have security measures for patients, families, personnel, and the public that are consistent with the conditions and risks inherent in the location of the facility.

1.3-2.3 Availability of Utilities

Outpatient facilities shall have access to utilities (water, gas, sewer, electricity) to meet requirements in the facility chapters in this document.

1.3-2.3.1 Water Supply

The water supply shall have the capacity to provide for normal usage and to meet fire-fighting requirements.

1.3-2.3.2 Electricity

The electricity provided shall be of stable voltage and frequency.

1.3-3 Site Features

1.3-3.1 Signage

Site signage shall be provided to direct people unfamiliar with the facility to parking areas and entrances.

1.3-3.2 Lighting

Site lighting shall be provided for the paths of travel for patients, families, personnel, and the public.

1.3-3.3 Roads and Walkways

~~Use of pervious paving shall be permitted.~~

1.3-3.3.1 Roads

~~Paved roads~~ Roads with a hard surface shall be provided within the property for access to all entrances and loading areas.

1.3-3.3.2 Pedestrian Walkways

~~Paved walkways~~ Walkways with a hard surface shall be provided for pedestrian traffic.

1.3-3.4 Parking

1.3-3.4.1 General

1.3-3.4.1.1 Outpatient facilities shall provide parking capacity to meet the needs of patients, personnel, and the public.

1.3-3.4.1.2 Parking needs shall be evaluated for each new facility, major addition, or major change in function.

~~**1.3-3.4.2** In the absence of local parking standards or ordinances, refer to individual chapters governing specific facility types for required parking capacity. In all instances, review individual chapters for requirements for dedicated emergency vehicle, patient transfer, and service parking.~~

~~**1.3-3.4.3** Unless otherwise prohibited by individual chapters, reduction of parking requirements shall be permitted as acceptable to local authorities having jurisdiction.~~

1.3-3.5 Emergency Access

1.3-3.5.1 Access to freestanding emergency facilities shall be well marked to facilitate entry from public roads or streets serving the site.

1.3-3.5.2 Access to emergency services shall be located to incur minimal damage from floods and other natural disasters. For additional information, see Section 1.2-4.8 (Disaster, Emergency, and Vulnerability Assessment).

1.3-3.6 Transfer Support Features

1.3-3.6.1 Heliports

Where heliports are provided, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

1.3-3.6.1.1 Heliport landing pads and flight approach paths shall comply with applicable regulations governing placement, safety features, lighting, fencing, and other site elements.

1.3-3.6.1.2 Facilities with heliports shall incorporate noise mitigation strategies ~~to meet the acoustic requirements outlined in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*. See~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design).

1.3-4 Environmental Pollution Control

The design, construction, renovation, expansion, equipment, and operation of outpatient facilities shall meet the provisions of applicable government environmental pollution control laws and associated agency regulations.

1.4 Equipment

1.4-1 General

1.4-1.1 Application

This chapter shall apply to all outpatient facility projects.

1.4-1.2 Equipment List

An equipment list shall be developed and maintained throughout the design development process and included in the project documents to assist in overall coordination of the acquisition, installation, and relocation of equipment.

1.4-1.2.1 The equipment list shall include all items of equipment necessary to operate the facility.

1.4-1.2.2 The equipment list shall include the classifications identified in Section 1.4-2 (Equipment Classification).

1.4-1.2.3 The equipment list shall specify whether the items are:

1.4-1.2.3.1 New owner-furnished and owner-installed

1.4-1.2.3.2 New owner-furnished and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.3 New contractor-furnished and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.4 Existing salvaged, reconditioned, relocated, and owner-installed

1.4-1.2.3.5 Existing salvaged, reconditioned, relocated, and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.6 Existing salvaged, relocated, and owner-installed

1.4-1.2.3.7 Existing salvaged, relocated, and contractor-installed

1.4-1.2.3.8 Not-in-contract (NIC)

1.4-1.3 Documentation Requirements

1.4-1.3.1 Provisions for Equipment

1.4-1.3.1.1 The drawings or other project documentation shall indicate provisions for installation of fixed or movable equipment that requires dedicated building services or special structures and illustrate how the major equipment will function in the space.

1.4-1.3.1.2 An equipment utility location drawing shall be produced to locate all services for equipment that will require floor space and mechanical connections.

1.4-1.3.2 Not-in-Contract (NIC) Equipment

1.4-1.3.2.1 Design development documents. Equipment that is not included in the construction contract but requires mechanical or electrical service connections or construction modifications shall be identified

on the design development documents to facilitate coordination with the architectural, mechanical, and electrical phases of construction.

1.4-1.3.2.2 Construction documents. Such equipment shall be identified in the construction documents as owner-provided or not-in-contract for purposes of coordination.

1.4-1.3.3 Final Equipment Selections

When final selections are made, the construction documents shall be revised to show the equipment placed in service and physical, structural, and infrastructure requirements needed to support the equipment.

1.4-2 Equipment Classification

Equipment to be used in projects shall be classified as building service equipment, fixed equipment, or movable equipment.

1.4-3 Equipment Requirements

1.4-3.1 Major Technical Equipment

Coordination of locations for and installation of major technical equipment shall be documented to facilitate coordination between the governing body, building designer, installer, construction contractors, and others.

1.4-3.2 Electronic Equipment

Computerized equipment, such as all imaging equipment/modalities, multiphasic laboratory analyzing units, and computers, shall be protected from power surges and spikes that might damage the equipment or software programs.

1.4-4 Space Requirements for Equipment

1.4-4.1 Fixed Equipment and Building Service Equipment

Where building service equipment is part of the project scope, space for accessing and servicing building service and other fixed equipment shall be provided on any side of the equipment required by the manufacturer.

1.4-4.2 Movable and Portable Equipment

1.4-4.2.1 The following shall be considered during facility planning and design:

1.4-4.2.1.1 Locations for placement of equipment requiring floor space and mechanical connections

1.4-4.2.1.2 Locations for the power required for electrical connections where portable equipment is expected to be used

~~**1.4-4.2.2** See Section 1.4-1.3.1 (Provisions for Equipment) for drawing requirements~~

2.1 Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities

2.1-1 General

2.1-1.1 Application

All outpatient projects, including those located in hospitals, shall meet the requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.1-1.1.1 Application of Part 1

All projects shall meet the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* with the amendments shown in Section 2.1-1 (Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities—General).

2.1-1.1.2 Approaches to Application of Parts 2 and 3

Two approaches to applying the requirements in Parts 2 and 3 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall be permitted—Approach 1 and Approach 2.

2.1-1.1.2.1 Approach 1

(1) If a project is for one of the specific facility types listed in this section, the requirements of that chapter shall apply.

(a) Chapter 2.2, Specific Requirements for General and Specialty Medical Services Facilities

(b) Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities

(c) Chapter 2.4, Specific Requirements for Birth Centers

(d) Chapter 2.5, Specific Requirements for Urgent Care Centers

(e) Chapter 2.6, Specific Requirements for Infusion Centers

(f) Chapter 2.7, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Surgery Facilities

(g) Chapter 2.8, Specific Requirements for Freestanding Emergency Care Facilities

(h) Chapter 2.9, Specific Requirements for Endoscopy Facilities

(i) Chapter 2.10, Specific Requirements for Renal Dialysis Centers

(j) Chapter 2.11, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Centers

(k) Chapter 2.12, Specific Requirements for Behavioral Health Crisis Centers

(l) Chapter 2.13, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

(m) Chapter 2.14, Specific Requirements for Dental Facilities

(n) Chapter 2.15, Specific Requirements for Short Stay Centers

(o) Chapter 2.16, Specific Requirements for Sleep Disorder Centers

(p) Chapter 2.17, Specific Requirements for Mobile Units

(2) When using Approach 1, the common elements in this chapter shall be required for a project when they are referenced from the specific outpatient facility chapter applied to the project.

2.1-1.1.2.2 Approach 2

(1) If a project is for a facility type that is not listed in Section 2.1-1.1.2.1 (Approach 1) but will include elements in one or more of those facility chapters and/or elements in this common elements chapter (Chapter 2.1), those specific requirements shall be applied to the project.

(a) The requirements in the common elements chapter and in the facility chapters in Part 2 that support the services to be included in the project shall be identified during the planning phase.

(b) The common element and specific facility chapter requirements identified as part of the project during the planning phase shall be documented in the basis of design.

(2) If required by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), the identified requirements shall be presented to the AHJ for review and approval prior to completion of design.

2.1-1.2 Functional Program

2.1-1.2.1 – 2.1-1.2.2 Reserved

2.1-1.2.3 Shared/Purchased Services

If space and/or services are to be shared or purchased, details of such shared or purchased space and/or services shall be indicated in the functional program to assure design and infection prevention considerations are addressed for services to be provided in the facility.

2.1-1.3 Reserved

2.1-1.4 Facility Layout

Facility layout shall preclude unrelated traffic through patient care areas.

2.1-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

2.1-2.1 General

During project planning, health care organizations providing services in outpatient facilities shall determine their need to provide spaces designed to enable safe care of individuals of size as required in Section 1.2-6.4.1 (Projected Need for Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size). (See the glossary for a definition of “individual of size.”)

2.1-2.1.1 Application

2.1-2.1.1.1 All patient care areas designated for care of individuals of size shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-2.1.1.2 A patient handling and mobility assessment (Section 1.2-4.3) shall determine the need for expanded-capacity lifts and architectural details that support mobility of individuals of size in spaces

where these patients may receive care. See Section 1.2-6.4.1.3 (Projected number of expanded-capacity lifts required) and Section1.2-6.4.2 (Design Response for Accommodations for Individuals of Size).

2.1-2.1.2 Location

Spaces designated for care of or use by individuals of size shall be provided where needed to accommodate the population expected to be served by the facility.

2.1-2.2 – 2.1-2.4 Reserved

2.1-2.5 Handwashing Station for Use by Individuals of Size

2.1-2.5.1 Handwashing stations in toilet rooms designated for use by individuals of size shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) and the requirement below in Section 2.1-2.5.2.

~~**2.1-2.5.2** The downward static force required for handwashing stations designated for individuals of size shall be identified during the planning phase and shall accommodate the maximum patient weight of the patient population.~~

2.1-2.5.2 Handwashing stations shall be designed to be capable of supporting 800 pounds (362.88 kilograms)

2.1-2.6 Patient Toilet Room for Individuals of Size

Toilet rooms designated for use by individuals of size shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-2.6.1 Space Requirements

Where the patient handling and mobility assessment (Section 1.2-4.3) indicates the need for a patient lift or two-person assist, the following clearances shall be provided:

2.1-2.6.1.1 Where an expanded-capacity toilet is used, it shall be mounted a minimum of 36 inches (91.44 centimeters) from the finished wall to the centerline of the toilet on both sides (for caregiver assistance and/or use of a floor-based lift).

2.1-2.6.1.2 Where a ~~regular~~ standard toilet is used that will not accommodate the patient weight determined by Section 1.2-6.4.1 (Projected Need for Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size), the toilet shall be mounted a minimum of 44 inches (1.12 meters) from the finished wall to the centerline of the toilet on both sides to allow for positioning of an expanded-capacity commode over the toilet when the weight capacity of the existing toilet will not accommodate the patient weight.

2.1-2.6.1.3 A rectangular clear floor area that is 46 inches (1.17 meters) wide shall extend 72 inches (1.83 meters) from the front of the toilet.

2.1-2.6.2 Grab Bars in Toilet Rooms for Individuals of Size

2.1-2.6.2.1 Grab bars shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.9 (Grab bars) as amended in this section.

2.1-2.6.2.2 Grab bars in toilet rooms intended for use by individuals of size shall be anchored to sustain a concentrated load of 800 pounds (362.87 kilograms).

~~**2.1-2.6.2.2** An adjustable/foldable grab bar mounted on a horizontally movable track shall be provided.~~

2.1-2.7 Single-Patient Exam/Observation Room for Care of Individuals of Size

An exam room designated for care of individuals of size shall meet requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms) as amended in this section.

2.1-2.7.1 Space Requirements

2.1-2.7.1.1 Clearances. Rooms shall be sized to permit the clearances in this section.

(1) At the foot of the ~~expanded-capacity~~ exam table: 5 feet (1.52 meters)

(2) On the non-transfer side of the ~~expanded-capacity~~ exam table: 3 feet (91.44 centimeters)

(3) On the transfer side of the ~~expanded-capacity~~ exam table:

(a) Where a ceiling- or wall-mounted lift is provided: 5 feet (1.52 meters) from the edge of the table

(b) In rooms without a ceiling- or wall-mounted lift: 7 feet (2.13 meters) from the edge of the table

2.1-2.7.1.2 When not in use for an individual of size, this exam room shall be permitted to be subdivided with cubicle curtains or movable partitions to accommodate two patients if each resulting bay or cubicle:

(1) Meets the following minimum clearance requirements:

(a) 5 feet (1.52 meters) between the sides of adjacent patient beds

(b) 4 feet (1.22 meters) between the sides of patient beds and adjacent walls or partitions

(2) Has direct access to a handwashing station.

(3) Meets all electrical, medical gas and vacuum, and nurse call requirements.

2.1-2.8 Equipment and Supply Storage for Care of Individuals of Size

When sizing equipment storage for areas where care will be provided for individuals of size, space shall be provided to accommodate the size of the expanded-capacity equipment (e.g., floor-based lifts, lift slings and accessories) and supplies that will be used.

2.1-2.9 Waiting Area Seating for Individuals of Size

2.1-2.9.1 Seating for individuals of size shall be provided in waiting areas in outpatient facilities.

2.1-2.9.2 Waiting areas shall be sized to accommodate the expanded-capacity furniture required for patients and visitors of size.

2.1-2.10 Special Design Elements for Spaces for Care of Individuals of Size

2.1-2.10.1 All plumbing fixtures, handrails, grab bars, patient lift equipment, built-in furniture, and other furnishings and equipment shall be designed to accommodate the maximum patient weight established in the planning phase.

2.1-2.10.2 Door Openings to Accommodate Individuals of Size

Door openings shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings) as amended in this section.

2.1-2.10.2.1 All door openings used for the path of travel to public areas and areas where care will be provided for individuals of size shall have a minimum clear width of 44.5 inches (1.13 meters) to provide access for expanded-capacity wheelchairs.

2.1-2.10.2.2 Door openings to toilet rooms designated for individuals of size shall have a minimum clear width of 44.5 inches (1.13 meters).

2.1-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.1-3.1 General

2.1-3.1.1 Application

Where the following clinical and support areas are provided in an outpatient facility, the requirements in this section shall apply.

2.1-3.1.2 Patient Privacy

Provisions shall be made to address patient visual and speech privacy.

2.1-3.2 Clinical Service Rooms and Facilities

2.1-3.2.1 General

The governing body shall perform an analysis of both the patient population to be seen and the patient care activities to be performed in a facility to determine the clinical service room types to be provided. These decisions shall be documented in the functional program.

2.1-3.2.2 Exam Rooms

Where an exam room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section for the room type selected.

2.1-3.2.2.1 General

(1) Determining types and numbers of exam room(s) needed. The type and numbers of exam rooms needed shall be determined in accordance with Section 1.2-2.1.1.3 (Determining clinical room need).

(2)~~(1)~~ Patient privacy. In addition to provisions for visual and speech privacy required in Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy),

~~(a) See Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy) for requirements.~~

~~(b)~~ ~~P~~provision shall be made to preserve patient privacy from observation from outside an exam room.

(3)~~(2)~~ Building system components. See the following tables for exam room requirements:

(a) Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities)

(b) Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities)

(c) Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities)

2.1-3.2.2.2 Single-patient exam/observation room

(1) General

(a) Where an exam room is used as an observation room, it shall be immediately accessible to the nurse or control station and a toilet room.

(b) A room arrangement in which an exam table, recliner, or chair is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served shall be permitted.

(2) Space requirements

(a) Single-patient exam/observation room

(i) Area. Each single-patient exam/observation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) as long as the following clearances can be met with the exam table or recliner that will be used.

(ii) Clearances. Room size shall accommodate a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) at each side and at the foot of the exam table or recliner.

(b) Single-patient exam/observation room with dual entry

(i) Area. Each dual-entry single-patient exam room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(ii) Clearances. Room size shall accommodate a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) at each side and at the foot of the exam table or recliner.

(c) Single-patient exam room for specialty clinical services

(i) Area. Single-patient rooms for specialty clinical services that require larger exam rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(ii) Clearances. Room size shall accommodate the following minimum clearances:

- 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) at the side(s), head, or foot of the exam table or chair that correspond(s) with the care provider(s)' expected work position(s)
- 1 foot (30.48 centimeters) at all sides (side, head, or foot) of the exam table or chair other than the work position(s)

(3) Room features. The exam room shall contain the following:

(a) Portable or fixed exam light as indicated in Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (1) (Lighting for specific locations in outpatient facilities—Exam/treatment/trauma rooms)

(b) Storage for supplies

(c) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation

(d) Space for a visitor's chair

(e) Handwashing station that complies with Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements)

2.1-3.2.2.3 Sexual assault forensic exam room. Where a sexual assault forensic exam room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (Single-patient exam/observation room) as amended in this section.

(1) Each sexual assault forensic exam room shall contain a pelvic exam bed/table.

(2) A private toilet room shall be immediately accessible to the sexual assault forensic exam room. This toilet room shall include:

(a) A shower

(b) Storage space for clothing, shoes, linens, and bathing products

(3) Provisions shall be made for lockable storage for forensic collection kits, laboratory supplies, and equipment.

(4) A room for consultation, family, support services, and law enforcement shall be readily accessible to the sexual assault forensic exam room.

2.1-3.2.3 Procedure Room

2.1-3.2.3.1 General

(1) Determining types and numbers of procedure room(s) needed. The type and numbers of procedure rooms needed shall be determined in accordance with Section 1.2-2.1.1.3 (Determining clinical room need).

(2)~~(1)~~ Application. This section shall apply to outpatient facilities that include a procedure room as defined in the glossary.

(a) Where it is determined the design requirements for a procedure room as shown in Table 2.1-4 (Exam/Treatment, Procedure, and Operating Room Classification) and in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* are appropriate, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(b) Where a procedure room is used for multiple procedure types, the room shall meet the most stringent requirements for the space.

(c) Where procedures that require a negative pressure environment are performed, a procedure room(s) with negative pressure shall be provided and identified with a sign. See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for more information.

(3)~~(2)~~ Location

(a) The procedure room shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area.

(b) The procedure room shall be permitted to be accessed from a semi-restricted corridor or from an unrestricted corridor.

2.1-3.2.3.2 Space requirements

(1) Area

(a) Procedure rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 130 square feet (12.08 square meters).

(b) Procedure rooms where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart shall have a minimum clear floor area of 160 square feet (14.86 square meters).

(c) Procedure rooms where procedures will be performed that require additional personnel and/or large equipment shall be sized to accommodate the personnel and equipment planned to be in the room during procedures, including any additional personnel and equipment needed for emergency rescue.

(2) Clearances

(a) Procedure rooms shall have the following minimum clearances around the procedure table, gurney, or procedural chair:

(i) 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) on each side

(ii) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at the head and foot

(b) Where an anesthesia machine and associated supply cart are used, the clearance at the head shall be 6 feet (1.83 meters) to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).

(c) Where large mobile equipment (e.g., a C-arm) is used, the procedure room shall meet the space requirements, including clearances, in Section ~~2.1-3.5.2.2~~ 2.3-3.2.3.2 (Class 2 Imaging Rooms—Space requirements).

(3) Fixed encroachments into the minimum clear floor area. Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for a procedure room as long as:

(a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) into the minimum clear floor area.

(b) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

2.1-3.2.3.3 Documentation area

(1) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the procedure room.

(2) Where a built-in feature is provided for documentation, it shall allow for direct observation of the patient when in use.

2.1-3.2.3.4 Patient privacy. Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.1-3.2.3.5 Handwashing station

(1) A handwashing station shall be provided in the procedure room in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

(2) Where a hand scrub station is directly accessible to the procedure room, omission of the handwashing station shall be permitted.

2.1-3.2.3.6 Reserved

2.1-3.2.3.7 Other design requirements

(1) Doors and door hardware~~. See Section~~ shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings) ~~for requirements~~.

(2) Surfaces~~. See Section~~ shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) ~~for requirements~~.

(3) Building system requirements

(a) HVAC system

(i) See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements for procedure rooms.

(ii) Anesthetic gas scavenging system. For procedure rooms where general anesthesia is provided, see note m in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ASHRAE/ASHE 170.

(b) Electrical receptacles. See Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

(c) Plumbing

(i) Drainage systems~~. See Section~~ shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.2.6 (Drainage systems) ~~for requirements~~.

(ii) Medical gas outlets and vacuum inlets~~. See~~ shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) ~~for requirements~~.

(d) Call systems~~. See~~ shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities) ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-3.2.3.8 Support areas for the procedure room. Facilities that have a procedure room(s) shall have the support areas in this section.

(1) General. Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the facility shall be permitted.

(2) – (7) Reserved

(8) Medication safety zones~~. See Section~~ shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

(9) – (10) Reserved

(11) Clean storage

(a) A storage area for clean/sterile supplies shall be provided.

(b) Facilities with more than one procedure room shall have a clean workroom.

(12) Soiled holding. A space for holding soiled materials shall be provided that is separate from the clean storage area.

(13) Equipment and supply storage. Where equipment-intensive procedures are performed or large mobile equipment is used in a procedure room, storage space for this equipment shall be provided.

(14) – (15) Reserved

(16) Sterile processing facilities. Where sterile processing is performed on-site, sterile processing facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-4.3.2 (Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing).

(17) Pre- and post-procedure patient care. Where pre- and post-procedure patient care is required to support the procedures performed in the procedure room, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(a) Location. Pre- and post-procedure patient care station(s) shall be permitted to be located in the procedure room or in a specifically designated patient care area.

(b) Design requirements. Where pre- and post-procedure patient care stations are located in a specifically designated patient care area, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) shall be met~~. for requirements.~~

2.1-3.2.3.9 Reserved

2.1-3.2.3.10 Support areas for patients. Provisions shall be made for securing patients' personal effects during procedures.

2.1-3.2.4 Operating Rooms

2.1-3.2.4.1 General

(1) Determining types and numbers of operating room(s) needed. The type and numbers of operating rooms needed shall be determined in accordance with Section 1.2-2.1.1.3 (Determining clinical room need).

(2)~~(1)~~ Application. This section shall apply to operating rooms ~~designated for the performance of invasive procedures~~ as defined in the glossary.

(3)~~(2)~~ The outpatient operating room shall meet the requirements of a restricted area.

2.1-3.2.4.2 Space requirements

(1) Area

(a) An operating room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 255 square feet (23.69 square meters).

(b) An operating room where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart shall have a minimum clear floor area of 270 square feet (25.08 square meters).

(c) An operating room where surgery that may require additional staff and equipment will be performed shall have a minimum clear floor area of 400 square feet (37.16 square meters).

(2) Clearances. The following minimum clearances shall be provided around the operating table, gurney, or procedural chair:

(a) For a 255-square-foot (23.69-square-meter) operating room:

(i) 6 feet (1.83 meters) on each side

(ii) 5 feet (1.52 meters) at the head and foot

(b) For a 270-square-foot (25.08-square-meter) operating room:

(i) 6 feet (1.83 meters) on each side

(ii) 6 feet (1.83 meters) at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).

(iii) 5 feet (1.52 meters) at the foot

(c) For a 400-square-foot (37.16-square-meter) operating room:

(i) 8 feet 6 inches (2.59 meters) on each side

(ii) 6 feet (1.83 meters) at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).

(iii) 7 feet (2.13 meters) at the foot

(3) Fixed encroachments into the minimum clear floor area. Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for an operating room as long as:

(a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) into the minimum clear floor area outside the sterile field.

(b) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

2.1-3.2.4.3 Documentation area

(1) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the operating room.

(2) Where a built-in feature is provided for documentation, it shall allow for direct observation of the patient when in use.

2.1-3.2.4.4 Visual information display. Each operating room shall have access to at least one visual information display where needed.

2.1-3.2.4.5 Hand scrub facilities. Hand scrub facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities).

2.1-3.2.4.6 Reserved

2.1-3.2.4.7 Other design requirements

(1) Surfaces. ~~See Section~~ Surfaces shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) ~~for requirements~~.

(2) Building system requirements

(a) HVAC system

(i) See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements for operating rooms.

(ii) Anesthetic gas scavenging system. For operating rooms where general anesthesia is provided, see note m in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ASHRAE/ASHE 170.

(b) Electrical receptacles. See Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

(c) Plumbing systems

(i) ~~See Section~~ Drainage systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.2.6 (Drainage systems) ~~for requirements~~.

(ii) Medical gas and vacuum requirements. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

(d) Communications systems

(i) All operating rooms shall be equipped with an emergency communication system that incorporates push activation of an emergency call switch.

(ii) For nurse call device requirements, see Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-3.2.4.8 Support areas for the operating room. Facilities that have an operating room(s) shall have the support areas in this section.

(1) **General.** Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the facility shall be permitted.

(2) – (7) Reserved

(8) Medication safety zone. ~~See Section~~ Medication safety zones shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

(9) – (10) Reserved

(11) Clean storage

(a) A storage area for clean/sterile supplies shall be provided.

(b) Facilities with more than one operating room shall have a clean workroom.

(12) Soiled holding. A space for holding soiled materials shall be provided that is separate from the clean storage area.

(13) – (15) Reserved

(16) Sterile processing facilities. Where sterile processing is performed on-site, sterile processing facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-4.3.2 (Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing).

(17) Pre- and post-procedure patient care. Where pre- and post-procedure patient care is required to support the procedures performed in the operating room, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(a) Location. Pre- and post-procedure patient care stations(s) shall be permitted to be located in the operating room or in a specifically designated patient care area.

(b) Design requirements. Where pre- and post-procedure patient care stations are located in a specifically designated patient care area, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) shall apply ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-3.2.4.9 Reserved

2.1-3.2.4.10 Support areas for patients. Storage for patients' belongings. Provisions shall be made for securing patients' personal effects during surgery.

2.1-3.2.5 Hybrid Operating Room

Hybrid operating rooms shall meet the requirements in chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities, Section 2.3-3.4 (Class 3 Imaging Rooms).

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6 Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Facilities

Where clinical hyperbaric oxygen therapy services are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.1 Hyperbaric treatment area

(1) General. The hyperbaric treatment area shall meet the requirements of the "Hyperbaric Facilities" chapter in NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

(2) Hyperbaric chamber facilities

(a) Multiplace (Class A chamber) facilities

(i) Area. The space provided to house Class A chambers and supporting equipment shall accommodate the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications but shall not be less than the space required to meet the clearances in Section 2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.1 (2)(a)(ii) (Clearances).

(ii) Clearances. There shall be a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) around the chamber except as follows:

- Gurney access. The area in front of chamber entries designed for gurney access shall have a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2.44 meters) for gurney approach.
- Wheelchair access. The area in front of chamber entries designed only for ambulatory or wheelchair access shall have a minimum clearance of 5 feet (1.52 meters) for wheelchair approach.

(iii) Entries

- Entries designed for wheelchairs or gurneys shall be provided with access ramps that are flush with the chamber entry doorway.
- Chamber entries not designed for gurney access shall be a minimum of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters).

(b) Monoplace (Class B chamber) facilities

(i) Area. The space provided to house Class B chambers and supporting equipment shall accommodate the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications but shall not be less than the space required to provide the clearances in Section 2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.1 (2)(b)(ii) (Clearances).

(ii) Clearances. There shall be a minimum clearance of 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) around the chamber except as follows:

- A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between the control sides of two chambers.
- A minimum passage of 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) shall be provided between the foot of each chamber and any wall or obstruction.
- The area in front of the chamber entry shall be designed for gurney access. A minimum clearance of 8 feet (2.44 meters) shall be provided for gurney approach.

(iii) An oxygen service valve shall be provided for each chamber.

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.2 – 2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.3 Reserved

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.4 Pre-procedure patient care area

(1) General. A patient holding area shall be provided.

(a) Location. The patient holding area shall be:

(i) Under staff control.

(ii) Located out of the direct line of normal traffic.

(iii) Located so that access to and from the hyperbaric treatment area is not obstructed.

(b) Hyperbaric facilities designed for outpatient services that will serve inpatients (two or fewer inpatients at one time) shall have separate inpatient and outpatient holding areas screened to provide visual and acoustic privacy.

(c) Omission of the patient holding area shall be permitted for facilities with two or fewer Class B hyperbaric chambers.

(2) Space requirements. The patient holding area shall be sized to accommodate patients on gurneys.

(3) Medical gas requirements. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.5 – 2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.7 Reserved

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.8 Support areas for the hyperbaric facility. The support areas in Section 2.6-3.8 (Support Areas for the Infusion Center), in addition to the amendments in this section, shall be provided for the hyperbaric facility.

(1) General. Where the hyperbaric facility is included as an integral portion of another service (e.g., a wound care service), support areas shall be permitted to be shared.

(2) Reception/control desk

(3) Reserved

(4) Consultation/exam room. A room(s) for individual consultation and treatment shall be provided.

(5) – (12) Reserved

(13) Equipment and supply storage

(a) Clean linen and supply storage. Where a separate supply storage room is provided, it shall be permitted to be shared with another area or clinical space in the facility.

(b) A gas cylinder room shall be provided for Class A facilities.

(i) The gas cylinder room shall provide, at minimum, space to house eight (H) cylinders and two gas manifolds, consisting of at least two (H) cylinders on each manifold.

(ii) Where dedicated medical gases are not provided from another area of the facility, this room shall be large enough to accommodate storage of enough (H) cylinders and manifolds for the reserve medical gases required for chamber operations.

(14) Environmental services room. An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room) as amended in this section.

(a) The environmental services room shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

(b) Where a separate storage room for environmental services supplies is provided, it shall be permitted to be shared with another area or clinical space in the facility.

(15) Reserved

(16) Compressor room

(a) The compressor room shall be large enough to house the chamber compressors, accumulator tanks, and fire suppression system and to allow them to meet the requirements of the "Hyperbaric Facilities" chapter in NFPA 99.

(b) Reserve breathing gases shall be permitted to be housed in the compressor room if that room is located in the hyperbaric suite.

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.9 Support areas for staff. A staff toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.10 Support areas for patients

(1) Patient waiting area

(a) Location. The patient waiting area shall be:

(i) Screened from unrelated traffic.

(ii) Under staff control.

(iii) Separated from the hyperbaric suite by a door.

(b) Space requirements

(i) Seating capacity shall be provided to accommodate the maximum expected patient volume.

(ii) Where the waiting area will also be used as a patient holding area, it shall be large enough to accommodate the clinical program and chamber mix~~. See~~ and shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.~~5~~6.4 (Pre-procedure patient care area) ~~for requirements~~.

(c) Omission of the patient waiting area shall be permitted for facilities with two or fewer Class B hyperbaric chambers.

(2) Patient toilet room. At least one toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be directly accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

(3) Patient changing room

(a) Changing rooms for patients shall be provided and shall include:

(i) A seat or bench made of non-absorbent material

(ii) A mirror

(iii) Provisions for hanging patients' clothing

(iv) Provisions for securing valuables

(b) At least one changing room that can accommodate wheelchair patients shall be provided.

2.1-3.3 Special Patient Care Rooms

2.1-3.3.1 General

Requirements for other types of special patient care rooms are located in the facility chapters.

2.1-3.3.2 Airborne Infection Isolation (AII) Room

Where an AII room is provided, it shall meet the requirements for the clinical space (e.g., exam room, procedure room) and the requirements in this section.

2.1-3.3.2.1 General

(1) In facilities that serve patients with known infectious disease, the need for and number of airborne infection isolation rooms shall be determined by an infection control risk assessment (ICRA).

(2) ~~See Section 1.2-4.2.2.1 (1) (ICRA Considerations: Design Elements—AII rooms) for requirements.~~ Whether an anteroom is to be provided for each AII room shall be determined by the ICRA.

2.1-3.3.2.2 AII room requirements

(1) Capacity. Each room shall accommodate only one patient.

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be located in each AII room.

(3) Personal protective equipment (PPE) storage. Provision shall be made for PPE storage and disposal at the entrance to the room.

2.1-3.3.2.3 Anteroom

(1) Whether an anteroom is required shall be determined by an infection control risk assessment (ICRA).

(2) Where an anteroom is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The anteroom shall provide space for persons to don PPE before entering the AII room and doff PPE after leaving the room.

(b) All doors to the anteroom shall have self-closing devices.

(c) The anteroom shall be equipped with at least the following:

(i) Handwashing station

(ii) Storage for unused PPE

(iii) Disposal/holding container for used PPE

2.1-3.3.2.4 Architectural details and furnishings. The requirements in this section are in addition to those in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) that apply to AII rooms.

(1) Architectural details

(a) AII room perimeter walls, ceiling, and floor, including penetrations, shall be constructed to prevent air exfiltration.

(b) Doors

(i) AII rooms shall have self-closing devices on all room exit doors. Omission of these devices shall be permitted if the alarm required in Section 2.1-3.3.2.5 (Pressure alarm) has an arrangement that allows activation of the audible alarm when the AII room is in use as an isolation room.

(ii) Edge seals shall be provided along the sides and top of the doorframe for any door into the AII room.

(iii) Use of bottom edge door sweeps to assist in maintaining negative pressure shall be permitted.

(2) Window treatments and privacy curtains

(a) Window treatments shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.4.2 (Window treatments in patient care areas) except that fabric drapes and curtains shall not be used.

(b) Use of fabric privacy curtains shall be permitted if the fabric is cleanable.

2.1-3.3.2.5 Pressure alarm. A visual or audible alarm that indicates if negative pressure is not maintained in the room shall be provided for the AII room.

2.1-3.4 Accommodations for Telemedicine Services

Where clinical telemedicine services are provided in a health care facility, telemedicine spaces to accommodate those services shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-3.4.1 Reserved

2.1-3.4.2 Telemedicine Bay, Cubicle, or Room

A bay, cubicle, or room shall be provided for telemedicine services.

2.1-3.4.2.1 General

(1) Where clinical telemedicine services are provided, the telemedicine bay, cubicle, or room shall meet the requirements of the section of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* that directly relates to the services provided and the patient population served.

(2) Where patient volume does not justify provision of a dedicated telemedicine room, a telemedicine room shall be permitted to serve other functions such as physician's office, exam room, or conference room.

2.1-3.4.2.2 Space requirements. Where used for exam purposes, the telemedicine bay, cubicle, or room shall be sized to accommodate the following:

(1) An exam table situated within view of the camera

(2) Telemedicine equipment (fixed or mobile)

(3) Peripheral devices

(4) An on-site caregiver or patient presenter

(5) A handwashing station where hands-on patient exams are provided

(6) A documentation area

(7) Placement of monitors, screens, or other projections of images or data where they are not visible to casual observers outside the telemedicine room

2.1-3.4.2.3 Privacy. The telemedicine bay, cubicle, or room shall provide visual and acoustic privacy.

2.1-3.4.2.4 Acoustic requirements. Telemedicine bays, cubicles, or rooms shall meet the requirements for speech intelligibility, sound isolation, background noise, and speech privacy described in this section.

(1) Speech intelligibility. Telemedicine rooms shall be designed to maintain the minimum sound absorption coefficient in Table 1.2-3 (Minimum Design Room-Average Sound Absorption Coefficients).

(2) Background noise. Telemedicine bays, cubicles, or rooms shall be designed to maintain background noise levels for the room's clinical requirement in Table 1.2-4 (Maximum Design Criteria for Noise in Interior Spaces Caused by Building Systems).

(3) Sound isolation. Telemedicine rooms shall be designed to achieve the minimum STC rating for these rooms in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

(4) Speech privacy. Telemedicine rooms shall be designed to achieve a minimum of normal speech privacy as identified in Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces).

2.1-3.4.2.5 Lighting

(1) The bay, cubicle, or room shall provide the ability for direct frontal lighting.

(2) Means for controlling glare from natural and artificial light sources shall be provided.

2.1-3.4.2.6 Interior surfaces

(1) Bay, cubicle, or room finishes and colors shall be selected to maintain natural rendition of color and pattern.

(2) Backdrop wall color shall have a light reflectance value of 30 to 40 percent.

2.1-3.4.2.7 Site identification. Facility identification shall be provided at the site so it appears in the transmitted image unless it is embedded in the telemedicine platform.

2.1-3.4.3 Support Areas for Telemedicine Bays, Cubicles, or Rooms

Where portable equipment and peripheral devices are used (e.g., digital camera and task lighting, portable EKG devices, smartphones, roaming robots), secure storage shall be provided.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The imaging section below has been reorganized and relocated to Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities. All previous 2.1-3.5 requirements can be found in the 2026 draft in Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities, in addition to any revised language available for public comment. All related cross-references in the document to imaging sections will be adjusted editorially before publication.

2.1-3.5 Imaging Services

See Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities, for requirements.

~~**2.1-3.5.1 General**~~

~~Where imaging services are provided in an outpatient facility, facilities for the modalities offered shall meet the requirements in this section.~~

~~**2.1-3.5.1.1 Application**~~

~~(1) The requirements in this section shall not apply to imaging services provided in mobile/transportable medical units except as noted in Chapter 2.13, Specific Requirements for Mobile/Transportable Medical Units.~~

~~(2) The requirements in this section shall not apply to imaging services provided using portable ultrasound equipment.~~

~~**2.1-3.5.1.2 Radiation protection.** For imaging services that require radiation protection, a certified radiation physicist or equally qualified expert representing the owner or appropriate state agency shall specify the type, location, and amount of radiation protection to be installed in accordance with the final approved imaging services layout and equipment selections.~~

~~(1) Shielded control room or alcove. Each imaging room containing non-portable radiation-emitting imaging equipment or imaging equipment requiring shielding from external sources of interference shall include a fixed shielded control room or alcove to minimize radiation exposure of technologists and others. Movable imaging equipment affixed to rails, tracks, or booms shall not be considered portable.~~

(a) Space requirements. The control room or alcove shall be, at minimum, sized and configured in compliance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance.

(b) Shared control room or alcove

(i) A control room or alcove shall be permitted to serve more than one imaging room, provided the manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance are accommodated for all rooms served.

(ii) Where a control room serves more than one imaging room, means shall be provided to prevent a patient in one imaging room from viewing a patient in another imaging room.

(c) Shielded view window. The control room or alcove shall include a shielded view window designed to provide a full view of the exam/procedure table and the patient at all times, including a full view of the patient during imaging activities (e.g., when the table is tilted or the chest X-ray is in use). If a direct line of sight cannot be accommodated due to functional requirements, use of closed-circuit video monitoring shall be permitted.

(d) Control room or alcove for Class 2 or Class 3 imaging room

(i) Where a control room is provided for a Class 2 or Class 3 imaging room, it shall be physically separated from the imaging room with walls and a door(s).

(ii) Omission of the control room door shall be permitted where the control room serves only one Class 2 or Class 3 imaging room provided the control room includes the same architectural details and environmental controls as the imaging room.

(iii) Laminar flow diffusers and low returns are not required in the control room.

(e) Omission of the control room or alcove shall be permitted in electrophysiology labs if approved by a certified radiation physicist and provisions are made for individual staff radiation shielding.

(2) Radiation protection requirements shall be incorporated into the specifications and the building plans.

2.1-3.5.2 Imaging Rooms

The requirements in this section shall apply to imaging rooms for all modalities except where indicated.

2.1-3.5.2.1 General

(1) Imaging room classification. To differentiate the design and construction requirements needed to achieve the environmental controls and other requirements that support the amount of intervention to be provided, imaging rooms shall be classified as Class 1, Class 2, or Class 3 imaging rooms as described in Table 2.1-5 (Classification of Room Types for Imaging Services).

(2) Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures, the more stringent requirements for the higher class room shall be followed.

(3) Where an imaging room intended for Class 3 procedures is provided, it shall meet the requirements for the applicable imaging modality and the requirements for an operating room in Section 2.1-3.2.4 (Operating Rooms), except for Section 2.1-3.2.4.2 (Operating Rooms—Space requirements).

2.1-3.5.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Clearances. Imaging rooms shall be sized and configured to provide the minimum clearances described in this section:

(a) All imaging rooms shall meet the manufacturer's recommended clearances for installation, service, and maintenance.

(b) Class 1 imaging rooms

(i) Imaging device clearances

(a) A 3-foot (91.44-centimeter) clearance shall be provided on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(b) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted on the side(s) of an imaging device that is mounted to/placed against a wall (e.g., a bone densitometry table) or in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(ii) Patient transfer side clearance

(c) A 4-foot (1.22-meter) clearance shall be provided on at least one designated patient transfer side(s) of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(d) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(c) Class 2 imaging rooms

(i) Imaging device clearances

(e) A 4-foot (1.22-meter) clearance shall be provided on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(f) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted on the side(s) of an imaging device that is mounted to/placed against a wall or in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(ii) Patient transfer side clearance

(g) A 5-foot (1.52-meter) clearance shall be provided on at least one designated patient transfer side(s) of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(h) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(d) Class 3 imaging rooms. See Section 2.1-3.5.2.1 (3) (Where an imaging room intended for Class 3 procedures…) for requirements.

(e) Imaging rooms where an anesthesia machine will be used. See clearances in Section 2.1-3.2.3.2 (2)(b) (Where an anesthesia...) for requirements.

(2) Where exams or procedures will be performed that require additional personnel and/or large equipment, imaging rooms shall be sized to accommodate the personnel and equipment planned to be in the room, including any that will be needed for emergency rescue.

2.1-3.5.2.3 Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. Handwashing stations and hand scrub facilities shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) or Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities).

(1) A handwashing station shall be provided in Class 1 imaging rooms unless specified otherwise for a specific imaging modality.

(2) A handwashing station or hand scrub facilities shall be provided for Class 2 imaging rooms.

(a) Where a handwashing station is provided, it shall be directly accessible to the Class 2 imaging room.

(b) Where hand scrub facilities are provided, a hand scrub position shall be directly outside the entrance to the Class 2 imaging room.

(3) Hand scrub facilities shall be provided directly outside the entrance to Class 3 imaging rooms.

2.1-3.5.2.4 Other design elements. The following shall apply to all imaging rooms, with noted exceptions:

(1) Architectural details and surfaces

(a) Floor

(i) Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet the flooring requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3.1 (6) (Floor and wall base assemblies).

(ii) Floor finishes shall be selected to conform to imaging equipment technical requirements (e.g., electrostatic dissipation), rolling resistance to carts and tables, and service limitations (e.g., no powered floor cleaners in an MRI scanner room).

(b) Ceiling

(i) Where only general diagnostic procedures are performed, use of a lay-in ceiling shall be permitted.

(ii) Class 2 imaging rooms shall be provided with ceiling assemblies that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3.3 (2) (Ceilings—Semi-restricted areas).

(iii) Class 3 imaging rooms shall be provided with ceiling assemblies that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3.3 (3) (Ceilings—Restricted areas).

(c) Door openings. Imaging rooms shall have entrance door openings that comply with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (Doors and door hardware).

(d) Structural support. The floor and, if applicable, ceiling structures in imaging rooms shall be designed to support the weight of the imaging equipment as well as other fixed ancillary equipment (e.g., lights, service columns) and movable ancillary equipment.

(e) Protection from vibration and other disturbances. Imaging room(s) shall be protected from environmental vibrations and other disturbances in accordance with the imaging equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

(2) Building system components

(a) Electrical receptacles. For requirements, see Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(b) Medical gas and vacuum systems. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

(c) Call devices. For requirements, see Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-3.5.2.5 System component room. Where a system component room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Location

(a) For Class 1 imaging rooms, the system component room shall be permitted to open into the imaging room.

(b) For Class 2 imaging rooms, the system component room shall be permitted to open into the imaging room provided no procedures meeting the definition of "procedural fluoroscopy" are performed in the imaging room.

(c) For Class 3 imaging rooms, the system component room shall not open into the imaging room or any restricted space.

(d) A system component room shall be permitted to be shared among multiple imaging rooms provided the equipment manufacturer(s) permits such sharing and that manufacturer recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance are accommodated for all rooms served.

(2) Space requirements. The system component room shall be sized to accommodate the following as indicated by the imaging equipment manufacturer(s), including the clear floor area:

(a) Transformers

(b) Power distribution equipment

(c) Power conditioning/uninterruptible power supply (UPS) equipment

(d) Computers

(e) Associated electronics and electrical gear

2.1-3.5.2.6 Multiple-modality devices. Where two or more individual imaging or therapy modalities are integrated into one imaging device (e.g., PET/CT, SPECT/CT, PET/MRI), the minimum design requirements for that room shall include the design criteria for each individual contributing modality.

2.1-3.5.3 Computed Tomography (CT) Facilities

2.1-3.5.3.1 CT scanner room

(1) The CT scanner room shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) and the requirement in Section 3.5.3.1 (2) just below.

(2) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the CT scanner room.

2.1-3.5.3.2 Control room or alcove. A control room or alcove that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.3.3 System component room. Where provided, a system component room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.5 (System component room).

2.1-3.5.4 Radiography Facilities

2.1-3.5.4.1 General

(1) All imaging rooms where radiography services are performed shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General).

(2) Room design and equipment siting shall accommodate the manufacturer's operational, service, and safety clearances for the imaging equipment used.

(3) Shielded control alcove

(a) See Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) for requirements.

(b) For mammography machines with built-in shielding for the operator, omission of a shielded control alcove shall be permitted when approved by the certified radiation physicist or authority having jurisdiction.

2.1-3.5.4.2 Radiography room

(1) Radiography rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.4.1 (Radiography Facilities—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms).

(2) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the radiography room.

2.1-3.5.4.3 Fluoroscopy room. Fluoroscopy rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(1) A separate toilet room with handwashing station shall be directly accessible from each dedicated Class 1 fluoroscopy room or combination radiography/fluoroscopy room. Patients shall be able to leave the toilet room without reentering the fluoroscopy room.

(2) Location of Class 2 and Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms used for different clinical applications in the same area or suite of rooms shall be permitted. These rooms shall be permitted to share common support areas.

(3) Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. Fluoroscopy rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities).

(4) Control room or alcove for fluoroscopy

(a) For Class 1 and Class 2 fluoroscopy rooms, a control room or alcove that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) shall be provided.

(b) For Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms, a control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.4.4 Mammography room. Mammography rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.4.1 (Radiography Facilities—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(1) Mammography rooms shall be sized to provide the following minimum clearances:

(a) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on all circulating sides of the patient position

(b) Other clearances in accordance with clinical needs

(2) Visual privacy of patients shall be provided. Views into the mammography room by the public or other patients shall be prevented when the room is in use.

(3) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the mammography room.

(4) Where patients do not change in the mammography room, changing room(s) for mammography patients shall be immediately accessible to the waiting area and imaging room(s).

(a) Changing room(s) shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.1-3.5.10.3 (Patient changing rooms).

(b) Combination of mammography changing room(s) with changing areas for other imaging services shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.5 Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) Facilities

2.1-3.5.5.1 Configuration of the MRI suite. The requirements in this section shall apply to MRI equipment that is affixed to the building (i.e., they shall not apply to portable MRI equipment).

(1) Suites for MRI equipment with a static magnetic field of 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) that is contained within the MRI scanner device shall conform with the manufacturer's siting guidance.

(2) Suites for MRI equipment with a static magnetic field of 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) that extends beyond the MRI scanner device shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The MRI suite shall conform to the four-zone screening and access control protocols identified in the current edition of the American College of Radiology's "ACR Manual on MR Safety."

(b) MRI suites as well as spaces around, above, and below (as applicable) shall adhere to requirements in International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) Standard 60601-2-33: *Medical electrical equipment—*Part 2-33: *Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of magnetic resonance equipment for medical diagnosis* that were established to prevent unscreened individuals from entering the 9-gauss (0.9-millitesla) volume around the MRI equipment and to minimize electromagnetic or radiofrequency interference to, or from, other equipment.

(c) In addition to the clinical and support areas in this section, the following shall be provided in the MRI suite:

(i) Space for patient interviews and physical and clinical screening separate from the MRI scanner

(ii) Patient treatment/resuscitation area. An area adjacent to the MRI scanner room shall be provided for patient code treatment/resuscitation.

(iii) Ferromagnetic (only) detection and warning systems

(iv) Access control

(v) Space to accommodate site-specific clinical and operational requirements such as image-guided procedures, emergent imaging, or general anesthesia support

(vi) Space for containment of non-MRI-safe objects outside restricted MRI safety zones

(vii) Space for storage (patient lockers) of patient belongings and non-MRI-safe items

(d) Any area in which the magnetic field strength is equal to or greater than 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) shall be physically restricted by the use of key locks or pass-key locking systems.

2.1-3.5.5.2 MRI scanner room

(1) MRI scanner rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) and the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.5.2 (2) just below.

(2) Handwashing station

(a) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided.

(b) Location of the handwashing station directly outside the entrance to the MRI scanner room shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.5.3 Superconducting MRI cryogen venting. Where a superconducting MRI system for which the manufacturer requires cryogen venting is installed, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(1) MRI equipment protection. A cryogen vent (quench) pipe shall be provided in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

(a) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall be clearly marked and shielded from staff and maintenance personnel areas and substantially removed from all public and patient routes of travel.

(b) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall have minimum clearances from air intakes, operable windows, or doors as defined by the MRI system manufacturer.

(c) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall be designed with weather head sufficient to protect against the ingress of horizontally driven rain.

(d) Accessible areas around cryogen vent points of discharge shall be marked to indicate the safety exclusion zone in accordance with MRI equipment manufacturer standards.

(2) Building/occupant protection. Emergency exhaust and passive pressure relief shall be provided in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

2.1-3.5.5.4 MRI control room. When the equipment manufacturer recommends an MRI control room for a typical equipment siting, a control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) shall be provided as amended in this section.

(1) The operator's console shall be positioned so the operator has a full view of the principal approach and entrance to the MRI scanner room.

(2) Where there is an outward-swinging door, in the open position the door shall not obstruct the view of the entry opening from the operator's console.

2.1-3.5.5.5 Entry vestibule

(1) The entry vestibule shall be located outside the MRI scanner room so that patients, health care personnel, and other employees must pass through it before entering the MRI scanner room.

(2) The entry vestibule shall be permitted to be either a part of the MRI control room or directly visible from the control room.

(3) Where an MRI's 9-gauss (0.9-milletesla) volume does not extend beyond the MRI device, an entry vestibule shall not be required.

2.1-3.5.5.6 System component room. A system component room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.5 (System component room) shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.5.7 Special design elements for the MRI scanner room

(1) Architectural details

(a) Ferromagnetic materials that may become detached or otherwise interfere with the operation of the MRI scanner shall not be used in MRI scanner rooms.

(b) Radiofrequency (RF) shielding shall be provided for clinical MRI installations to attenuate stray radio frequencies that could interfere with the MRI imaging process.

(c) The MRI scanner room shall be located and/or shielded to avoid electromagnetic interference from elevators or other electromagnetic equipment.

(d) At sites where magnetic field hazards or interferences are not adequately controlled through facility planning (i.e., by physical distance), the need for magnetic shielding shall be assessed by a certified physicist experienced in magnetic shielding design or an equally qualified expert.

(e) Acoustic control shall be provided to mitigate the noise emitted by the MRI scanner. For requirements, see Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

(2) Structural details

(a) The floor structure shall be designed to support the weight of MRI scanner equipment, minimize disturbance to the MRI magnetic field, and mitigate disruptive environmental vibrations.

(b) Structural designs shall keep ferrous content at or below MRI manufacturer requirements, based on mass and proximity to the MRI scanner.

(3) Electrical details

(a) Power conditioning and/or uninterruptible power supplies shall be provided as indicated by the MRI manufacturer's power requirements and specific facility conditions.

(b) MRI magnet indicator sign

(i) MRI rooms shall be marked with a lighted sign with a red light to indicate the magnet is always on.

(ii) For MRI systems for which the magnetic field is regularly de-energized, signage that is lighted only when the magnet is on shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.6 Ultrasound Facilities

2.1-3.5.6.1 Ultrasound room. Ultrasound rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(1) Clearances. Ultrasound rooms shall be sized to provide the following minimum clearances:

(a) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on all circulating sides of the patient table or procedural chair

(b) Other clearances in accordance with clinical needs

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the imaging room.

2.1-3.5.6.2 Patient toilet room. See Section 2.1-3.5.10.2 (2) (Toilet rooms for imaging rooms) for requirements.

2.1-3.5.7 Nuclear/Molecular Imaging Services

2.1-3.5.7.1 General

(1) Application. Where nuclear imaging services are offered, space to support those services shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in this section.

(2) Nuclear imaging room. Nuclear imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended Section 2.1-3.5.7 (Nuclear/Molecular Imaging Services).

(3) Exercise area or room. Where patients are required to exercise before imaging is conducted, space shall be provided for the following in the imaging room or in a separate room directly accessible to the imaging room:

(a) Exercise equipment (e.g., stationary bicycle, treadmill). Clearance shall be provided for patient and caregiver access to the equipment on the primary access side and one adjacent side.

(b) Staff workspace

(4) Handwashing stations. Handwashing stations shall be provided throughout the nuclear imaging suite at location(s) of patient contact and at locations where radiopharmaceutical materials are handled, prepared, or disposed. See sections on specific nuclear imaging modalities for additional requirements.

(5) Nuclear imaging dose administration area. A dose administration area shall be provided.

(a) The dose administration area shall be located near the preparation area.

(b) Because several hours may elapse before a dose takes effect, the area shall provide for visual privacy from other areas.

(c) Combination of this area with a pre-procedure patient care area(s) as described in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) shall be permitted provided there is visual privacy between the areas.

(d) For PET services, combination of this area with a patient uptake room as described in Section 2.1-3.5.7.3 (7) (Uptake/cooldown room) shall be permitted.

(6) Surfaces. Surfaces throughout the nuclear imaging suite shall be constructed of cleanable, nonporous materials that can be decontaminated.

2.1-3.5.7.2 Scintigraphy (gamma camera services) facilities

(1) Scintigraphy areas or rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) and the requirement in Section 2.1-3.5.7.2 (2) just below.

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the scintigraphy room.

2.1-3.5.7.3 Positron emission tomography (PET) facilities

(1) Where two or more imaging or therapy modalities are integrated into one imaging device (e.g., PET/CT or PET/MRI), see the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.6 (Multiple-modality devices).

(2) PET suite configuration

(a) PET suites shall be designed and positioned in the facility to restrict incidental exposure to ionizing radiation sources by persons not immediately involved in the PET exam.

(b) A certified radiation physicist or other qualified person shall determine if, and to what extent, radiation shielding is required at radiopharmacy, hot lab, scanner, patient holding, and other spaces.

(3) PET scanner room

(a) PET scanner rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms) and the requirement in Section 2.1-3.5.7.3 (3)(b) just below.

(b) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the PET scanner room.

(4) Control room. A control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (1) (Shielded control room or alcove) and is designed to accommodate the controls for the equipment shall be provided.

(5) System component room. Where a system component room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.5 (System component room).

(6) Cyclotron room. Where radiopharmaceuticals are prepared on-site, a cyclotron shall be provided. A cyclotron shall not be required when radiopharmaceuticals are provided by commercial sources.

(a) Where provided, cyclotron facilities shall be located in access-restricted areas in accordance with applicable state and federal laws.

(b) Shielding requirements for cyclotron facilities shall be coordinated between the equipment manufacturer and a reviewing medical physicist.

(c) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the cyclotron room.

(7) Uptake/cooldown room. A shielded room(s) shall be provided for patient uptake/cooldown.

(a) Uptake rooms shall be provided as appropriate to the exams and radiopharmaceuticals used for the PET service.

(b) Uptake rooms shall be configured and appointed to minimize patient movement during the radiopharmaceutical uptake period.

(c) A toilet room with a handwashing station and a dedicated hot toilet to accommodate radioactive sanitary waste shall be adjacent to the uptake/cooldown room.

2.1-3.5.7.4 Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) facilities

(1) SPECT rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.5.1 (Imaging Services—General) and 2.1-3.5.2 (Imaging Rooms).

(2) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.5.2.3 (Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities) shall be provided in the SPECT room.

2.1-3.5.8 Support Areas for Imaging Services

2.1-3.5.8.1 General. Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the same facility shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.8.2 Reception area with control desk. A reception area with control desk shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.8.3 Documentation area. Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided for staff.

2.1-3.5.8.4 Consultation area

(1) An area shall be provided for consultation with patients or the referring clinician.

(2) Where remote consultation with referring clinicians is offered in the facility, see Section 2.1-3.4 (Accommodations for Telemedicine Services) for more information on spaces for remote consultation.

2.1-3.5.8.5 – 2.1-3.5.8.7 Reserved

2.1-3.5.8.8 Medication safety zone and storage. Where medications are administered as part of the imaging services provided, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) A medication safety zone as described in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) shall be immediately accessible from pre- and post-procedure patient care areas.

(2) Provision shall be made for locked storage of medications.

2.1-3.5.8.9 – 2.1-3.5.8.10 Reserved

2.1-3.5.8.11 Clean supply room

(1) Storage for clean supplies and linens that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) shall be readily accessible to imaging rooms.

(2) This storage shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services in the same facility.

2.1-3.5.8.12 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room

(1) A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

(2) A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be permitted to be shared with another clinical service provided the soiled workroom or soiled holding room is readily accessible to the imaging facility.

(3) Hot soiled holding

(a) Where nuclear imaging services are offered and a medical physicist has determined it is necessary, a contaminated soiled holding area that is separate from other waste holding areas shall be provided in the soiled workroom or soiled holding room.

(b) Radiation, occupational, and environmental protections for contaminated holding area(s) shall be provided as defined by a medical physicist.

(c) A dedicated hot soiled holding area or room shall be permitted to be shared between two adjacent clinical services that produce hot waste.

2.1-3.5.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

(1) Clean linen storage. A storage area for clean linen shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.8.14 Environmental services room

(1) An environmental services room with immediate access to the imaging suite shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

(2) Sharing of the environmental services room with other clinical services shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.8.15 Pre- and post-procedure patient care area

(1) For Class 1 imaging rooms in which patients receive point-of-care lab work or injection preparation, a minimum of one patient care station shall be provided for every three Class 1 imaging rooms or fraction thereof.

(2) For Class 2 imaging rooms, one patient care station shall be provided for each Class 2 imaging room unless the safety risk assessment determines another ratio is needed.

(3) For Class 3 imaging rooms, pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care).

(4) Where surgery facilities are adjacent to imaging facilities, pre- and post-procedure patient care areas shall be permitted to be shared between imaging and surgical services.

2.1-3.5.8.16 Contrast media preparation area

(1) Where contrast media are prepared in the imaging department, this area shall include:

(a) Sink

(b) Counter

(c) Storage to accommodate preparation of contrast media

(d) Secure, lockable storage

(2) Where contrast media will not be prepared in the imaging facility, omission of the sink and counter shall be permitted.

(3) One contrast media preparation area shall be permitted to serve multiple imaging rooms.

(4) The contrast media preparation area shall be permitted to be part of a medication preparation area. See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for information.

2.1-3.5.8.17 Image management system

(1) Provisions for a digital image management system shall be made in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records).

(2) Location of the image management system off-site shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.8.18 Image interpretation/reading rooms. Space shall be provided to accommodate equipment for image interpretation or "reading" of medical images.

(1) Remote location of image interpretation/reading areas shall be permitted, provided radiologists are immediately available when interventional imaging procedures are performed.

(2) Where provided on-site, image interpretation/reading areas shall include the following:

(a) Lighting

(i) Adjustable ambient lighting with minimal glare projected onto computer monitors

(ii) A higher level of illumination for room maintenance (that can be activated separate from ambient reading lighting)

(iii) Workstation task lighting for writing or reading hard copy

(b) Acoustic control. Where multiple radiologists interpret images in a contiguous space, materials, finishes, and sound masking that together provide acoustic control to minimize disruption from conversational speaking, dictation, and surrounding noise shall be specified.

2.1-3.5.8.19 Facilities for processing ultrasound probes. Where cleaning and high-level disinfection of ultrasound probes are performed in a dedicated room or area, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Where an ultrasound probe processing room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The processing room shall be permitted to serve multiple rooms where ultrasound exams are performed.

(b) The size of the processing room shall be dictated by the equipment used and the number of probes to be processed.

(c) The processing room shall allow for the flow of ultrasound probes from the decontamination area to a clean area and then to storage.

(d) The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

(i) Work counter

(ii) Instrument-washing sink appropriate to the method of decontamination used

(iii) Handwashing station

(iv) Space and utility connections to support the high-level disinfection process and equipment used

(2) Where ultrasound probes are processed at the point of use or in a separate room or area using a self-contained, automated high-level disinfection unit specifically designed for ultrasound probes:

(a) Space for the device with access to an electrical receptacle shall be provided.

(b) Access to a soiled workroom with an instrument-washing sink shall be provided in the same clinical area to support probe decontamination when necessary.

(3) Clean ultrasound probe storage. Storage for clean ultrasound probes shall be provided.

2.1-3.5.8.20 Radiopharmaceutical production pharmacy. Where radiopharmaceutical preparation is performed on-site, an area to house a radiopharmacy shall be provided with appropriate shielding.

(1) Space requirements

(a) Space shall be provided for dose calibration, quality assurance, and record-keeping activities.

(b) Space shall be provided for storage of radionuclides, chemicals for preparation, dose calibrators, and records.

(2) Surfaces. Floors and walls shall be constructed of easily decontaminated materials.

(3) HVAC system. Hoods for pharmaceutical preparation shall meet applicable standards.

2.1-3.5.8.21 Hot lab for nuclear/molecular imaging services. Where scintigraphy, PET, and SPECT services are provided, a securable area or room(s) shall be provided in which radiopharmaceuticals can be safely stored and doses can be calculated and prepared.

(1) A single hot lab shall be permitted to serve multiple nuclear imaging scanners.

(2) The hot lab shall be shielded with radiation protection in accordance with Section 2.1-3.5.1.2 (Radiation protection).

(3) The hot lab shall include the following:

(a) Source storage area

(b) Dose storage area

(c) Storage area for syringe shields

(d) Emergency eyewash and/or shower

2.1-3.5.9 Support Areas for Imaging Services Staff

The following spaces shall be provided:

2.1-3.5.9.1 Staff lounge

(1) A staff lounge shall be readily accessible to the imaging facilities.

(2) The staff lounge shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services.

2.1-3.5.9.2 Staff toilet room

(1) A staff toilet room(s) shall be adjacent to the staff lounge.

(2) In suites of three or more imaging rooms, staff toilets shall be immediately accessible to the imaging suite.

2.1-3.5.9.3 Storage for staff

(1) Provisions shall be made for securing staff belongings.

(2) Location of these provisions outside the staff lounge shall be permitted.

2.1-3.5.9.4 Staff changing area

(1) For Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms, a staff changing area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area) shall be provided.

(2) The staff changing area shall be permitted to be shared with surgery services.

2.1-3.5.10 Support Areas for Imaging Patients

2.1-3.5.10.1 Reserved

2.1-3.5.10.2 Patient toilet room

(1) Patient toilet rooms with handwashing stations shall be immediately accessible to waiting rooms or areas and, where provided, to patient changing rooms.

(2) Toilet rooms for imaging rooms

(a) Where procedures performed require patient access to toilets, a patient toilet room shall be directly accessible from the imaging room.

(b) A patient toilet room shall be permitted to serve more than one imaging room.

(c) Shared toilet rooms shall have interlocking door access hardware.

(3) Toilet rooms for nuclear imaging patients

(a) Toilet rooms reserved for nuclear imaging patients shall be immediately accessible to waiting rooms or areas and nuclear imaging rooms.

~~(b) For dosed nuclear imaging patients, dedicated hot toilets, restricted from the use of all others for a duration from last use set by a medical physicist, shall be provided in quantities and locations to meet the needs of nuclear imaging patients.~~

~~**2.1-3.5.10.3 Patient changing rooms**~~

~~(1) Where changing rooms are provided, they shall be located adjacent to the imaging rooms.~~

~~(2) Each room shall include a seat or bench and mirror.~~

~~(3) Means for individual lockable storage for patient clothing and valuables shall be immediately accessible to changing rooms.~~

~~**2.1-3.5.10.4 Patient waiting room or area**~~

~~(1) Where provided, a waiting room or area for patients receiving imaging services shall include the following:~~

~~(a) Access to toilet facilities~~

~~(b) Access to drinking water~~

~~(c) Access to public communications services~~

~~(2) Sub-waiting area~~

~~(a) Provision of sub-waiting areas for individual modalities, or sharing of waiting areas among similar modalities, shall be permitted.~~

~~(b) Sub-waiting areas shall be separated from unrelated traffic and under staff control.~~

~~(3) Low-level hot patient waiting area~~

~~(a) Where imaging services will result in patients with low levels of radiation (low-level hot), a sub-waiting area to isolate these patients shall be provided.~~

~~(b) Omission of this area shall be permitted if a medical physicist's report indicates it is not necessary.~~

2.1-3.6 Radiation Therapy

2.1-3.6.1 General

Space shall be provided to accommodate the equipment and staff needed for planned radiation therapy services.

2.1-3.6.2 External Beam Radiation Therapy Suite

2.1-3.6.2.1 Exam room

(1) An exam room that meets the requirements for a single-patient exam room in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms), as amended Section 2.1-3.6.2.1 (2) just below, shall be provided for each external beam radiation therapy room.

(2) The exam room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

2.1-3.6.2.2 Radiation therapy room

(1) Space requirements

(a) Simulator, accelerator, brachytherapy, and cobalt rooms shall be sized to accommodate the following:

(i) Equipment

(ii) Access to equipment for patient on a gurney

(iii) Medical staff access to the equipment and patient

(iv) Service access to equipment

(b) Radiation therapy rooms shall be sized in compliance with the manufacturer's technical specifications.

(i) Where a table is used, the room shall be sized to provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) on three sides of the table to facilitate bed transfer and provide access to the patient.

(ii) The door swing shall not encroach on the equipment or on patient circulation or transfer space.

2.1-3.6.2.3 Support areas for the external beam radiation therapy suite

(1) Support areas for the linear accelerator. Combining the mold and block rooms shall be permitted.

(a) A mold room with handwashing station shall be provided. Where toxic materials will be manipulated (e.g., melted, reformed, machined) in this room, an exhaust hood shall be provided.

(b) A block room with storage shall be provided.

(2) Control room or area

(a) External beam radiation therapy rooms shall have a control room or area.

(b) Each control room or area shall provide audio contact with patient in the treatment room.

(c) Each control room or area shall provide direct or remote (e.g., electronic) visual observation of the patient in the treatment room.

(d) Control room devices and equipment shall not be placed in a public corridor or alcove.

(3) Support area for the cobalt room. A hot lab shall be provided in accordance with Section ~~2.1-3.5.8.21~~ 2.3-3.8.15.6 (Hot lab for nuclear imaging services).

2.1-3.6.2.4 Combined imaging/therapy systems. Where external beam radiation therapy systems are combined with a concurrent imaging option (e.g., CT or MRI), the full design criteria for both contributing imaging/therapy devices shall be applied to the combined service.

2.1-3.6.3 Radiosurgery Suite

2.1-3.6.3.1 General

(1) The radiosurgery suite shall be readily accessible to the imaging services suite to facilitate image acquisition prior to radiosurgery treatment.

(2) Exam room. An exam room that meets the requirements for a single-patient exam room in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms), as amended in this section, shall be provided for each radiosurgery room.

(a) The exam room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(b) Where private pre- and post-procedure patient care stations are provided in the radiosurgery suite, omission of the exam rooms shall be permitted.

2.1-3.6.3.2 Radiosurgery rooms

(1) Space requirements

(a) Area

(i) Radiosurgery (i.e., gamma knife/cyber knife) rooms shall be sized to accommodate patient access on a gurney, medical staff access to the equipment and patient, and service access.

(ii) Radiosurgery rooms shall be sized and configured to accommodate the manufacturer's technical specifications.

(b) Clearances

(i) A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided on all sides of the patient table for maintenance access and clearance around the table sufficient to facilitate patient transfer.

(ii) The door swing shall not encroach on the equipment or on patient circulation or transfer space.

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in each radiosurgery room.

2.1-3.6.3.3 Pre- and post-procedure accommodations. Where provided, pre- and post-procedure patient care stations shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care).

2.1-3.6.3.4 Support areas for radiosurgery rooms. The following support spaces and/or areas shall be provided:

(1) Space for sterilization of head frames

(2) Target planning

(3) Medication safety zone. ~~See Section~~ Medication safety zones shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

(4) Nourishment/mini-fridge

(5) Storage for head frames. Location of this at each pre- and post-procedure patient care station shall be permitted.

(6) Separate toilet room(s) for patients and staff

(7) Area for sedation of pediatric patients

2.1-3.6.3.5 Additional support areas for the radiosurgery device

(1) Frame pin sterilization. Access to an on-site sterile processing facility shall be provided unless sterile processing is provided off-site., in which case the requirements of Section ~~See Section~~ 2.1-4.3.2 (Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing) shall be met ~~for requirements~~.

(2) Source delivery route. Where a radiosurgery device that uses a radioactive source is installed, a delivery route that meets the manufacturer's requirements shall be provided.

2.1-3.6.3.6 Support areas for patients in the radiosurgery suite

(1) Where individual pre-procedure/recovery positions in cubicles or rooms are provided, separate patient changing areas shall not be required.

(2) Storage for patient belongings shall be provided.

2.1-3.6.4 Proton Therapy Suite

2.1-3.6.4.1 General

(1) Application. Rooms and spaces shall be provided to accommodate the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

(2) Location. Location of proton therapy facilities in a radiation therapy suite shall be permitted.

(3) Exam room

(a) Two exam rooms that meet the requirements for a single-patient exam room in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms), as amended in Section 2.1-3.6.4.1 (3)(b) just below, shall be provided for each proton therapy room.

(b) Each exam room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

2.1-3.6.4.2 Proton therapy room

(1) Space requirements. The proton therapy room(s) shall be sized to:

(a) Accommodate the following:

(i) Proton therapy equipment

(ii) Patient access on a gurney

(iii) Medical staff access to the equipment

(iv) Patient in-room storage of equipment devices

(v) Service access

(b) Accommodate a balance between clinical support requirements and the needs of the specific equipment.

(i) The room shall be sized to provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) on three sides of the patient table to facilitate bed transfer and provide access to the patient.

(ii) The door swing shall not encroach on the equipment or on patient circulation or transfer space.

(2) Cyclotron vault. Cyclotron facility program requirements depend on specific proton therapy equipment and facility equipment type.

(3) A hand sanitation dispenser shall be located immediately inside or outside the entrance to the proton therapy room.

2.1-3.6.4.3 Gurney holding bays. Two gurney holding bays shall be provided for each proton therapy room.

(1) These shall be located adjacent to the proton therapy rooms and screened for privacy.

(2) A separate waiting area shall be provided for queued patients.

2.1-3.6.4.4 – 2.1-3.6.4.5 Reserved

2.1-3.6.4.6 Support areas for proton accelerators. The following shall be provided:

(1) General supply storage in proton therapy room for patient care supplies

(2) Storage for patient positioning devices. Location of this storage shall be permitted to be immediately accessible to the proton therapy room.

(3) Storage for patient-specific therapy devices (e.g., apertures and compensators)

(4) Post-treatment storage for patient-specific therapy devices (e.g., apertures and range compensators)

(a) This shall be a separate shielded room. Requirements for radioactive shielding shall be verified by a certified radiophysicist.

(b) This storage room does not need to be in the immediate vicinity of the proton therapy suite.

(c) Sharing of this room with other services shall be permitted.

2.1-3.6.5 – 2.1-3.6.6 Reserved

2.1-3.6.7 Special Design Elements for the Radiation Therapy Suite

2.1-3.6.7.1 Architectural details

(1) The floor structure shall meet the minimum load requirements for equipment, patients, and personnel.

(2) Ceiling-mounted equipment shall have properly designed rigid support structures located above the finished ceiling.

(3) Where entry into the radiation vault is via direct-shielded door, both a motor-driven automatic opening system and a manual emergency opening system shall be provided.

(4) The height and width of doorways, elevators, and mazes shall allow for delivery of equipment and replacement sources into radiation therapy rooms.

(5) Radiation protection requirements

(a) Radiation protection shall be provided in the following rooms:

(i) Cobalt, linear accelerator, and simulator rooms

(ii) Radiosurgery rooms

(iii) Proton therapy rooms

(b) Both photons and neutrons shall be taken into account in the shielding for electron accelerators of higher energy.

(c) Layouts shall be designed to prevent the escape of radioactive particles.

(d) Openings into the room, including doors, ductwork, vents, and electrical raceways and conduits, shall be baffled to prevent direct exposure to other areas of the facility.

(e) Physicist and vendor input shall be obtained in the design process.

(i) A certified physicist representing the owner or appropriate state agency shall specify the type, location, and amount of protection to be installed in accordance with final approved layout and equipment selection.

(ii) The architect shall incorporate these specifications into the building plans.

2.1-3.6.8 Support Areas for Radiation Therapy

The support areas in this section shall be provided.

2.1-3.6.8.1 General. Sharing of these areas between different services in the radiation therapy suite or other areas shall be permitted.

2.1-3.6.8.2 – 2.1-3.6.8.3 Reserved

2.1-3.6.8.4 Business office and/or reception/control area

2.1-3.6.8.5 – 2.1-3.6.8.12 Reserved

2.1-3.6.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

(1) A gurney storage area shall be immediately accessible to the radiation therapy rooms.

(2) The gurney storage area shall be permitted to be combined with a waiting area.

2.1-3.6.8.14 Environmental services room. This shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.1-3.6.8.15 Reserved

2.1-3.6.8.16 Optional support areas for radiation therapy. Where the support areas listed are provided, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Offices

(a) Oncologist's office. Combination of this office with a consultation room shall be permitted.

(b) Physicist's office. Combination of this office with the treatment planning and record room shall be permitted.

(2) Consultation room. Private prep/holding rooms shall be permitted to be used in lieu of a dedicated consultation room.

(3) Quality control area. This area shall have an image viewing station.

2.1-3.6.9 Reserved

2.1-3.6.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.1-3.6.10.1 Reserved

2.1-3.6.10.2 Patient toilet room. Toilet rooms reserved for radiation therapy patients shall be directly accessible to waiting areas and procedure rooms.

2.1-3.6.10.3 Patient changing area. Two gowning cubicles shall be provided for each proton therapy room.

(1) Secure storage for valuables and clothing shall be provided.

(2) At least one space shall be large enough for staff-assisted dressing.

2.1-3.6.10.4 Patient waiting areas

(1) A waiting area for gowned patients shall be provided adjacent to the changing area.

(2) Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in the waiting area.

2.1-3.7 Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care

2.1-3.7.1 General

2.1-3.7.1.1 Application. Patient care stations shall be provided to accommodate lounge chairs, gurneys, or beds for pre- and post-procedure (recovery) patient care as well as seating space for family/visitors.

2.1-3.7.1.2 Location. Pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s) shall be an unrestricted area.

2.1-3.7.1.3 Layout

(1) Layout. The following arrangements shall be permitted ~~as long as all patient care stations combined in the same area meet the most restrictive requirements of the areas to be combined~~.

(a) Combination of pre-procedure (Section 2.1-3.7.3) and post-procedure (Phase I [Section 2.1-3.7.4] and Phase II [Section 2.1-3.7.5]) patient care stations in one patient care area, as long as each patient care station shall meet the most restrictive requirements of the areas to be combined.

(b) Separate pre-procedure patient care area and post-procedure recovery area(s)

(c) Three separate areas: pre-procedure patient care area, Phase I post-anesthesia care unit (PACU), and Phase II recovery area

2.1-3.7.1.4 Number of patient care stations

(1) Where pre- and post-procedure patient care stations are combined in one patient care area, at least one patient care station shall be provided for each procedure room, operating room, Class 2 imaging room, and Class 3 imaging room.

(2) Where separate pre-procedure and recovery areas are provided, the number of patient care stations shall be as required in these sections:

(a) Section 2.1-3.7.3 (Pre-Procedure Patient Care Room or Area)

(b) Section 2.1-3.7.4 (Phase I Post-Anesthesia Recovery Room)

(c) Section 2.1-3.7.5 (Phase II Recovery Room or Area)

2.1-3.7.2 Patient Care Station Design

2.1-3.7.2.1 Bays, cubicles, or single-patient rooms that meet the requirements in this section shall be permitted to serve as patient care stations.

2.1-3.7.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Area. When determining the area for a patient care station, space shall be provided to accommodate the equipment to be used.

(2) Clearances

(a) Where bays are used, the following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(i) 5 feet (1.52 meters) between the sides of patient beds/gurneys/lounge chairs

(ii) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides of beds/gurneys/lounge chairs and adjacent walls or partitions

(iii) 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) between the foot of beds/gurneys/lounge chairs and the cubicle curtain

(b) Where cubicles are used, the following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(i) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides and foot of beds/gurneys/lounge chairs and adjacent walls or partitions.

(ii) 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) between the foot of beds/gurneys/lounge chairs and the cubicle curtain

(c) Where bays or cubicles face each other, an aisle with a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2.44 meters) independent of the foot clearance between patient stations or other fixed objects shall be provided.

(d) Where single-patient rooms are used, 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between the sides and foot of beds/gurneys/lounge chairs and adjacent walls or partitions.

2.1-3.7.2.3 Reserved

2.1-3.7.2.4 Patient privacy. Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.1-3.7.2.5 Handwashing station(s). ~~See Section~~ A handwashing station(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-3.7.2.6 Building system components

(1) For electrical receptacle requirements, see Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(2) For nurse call requirements, see Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

(3) For oxygen and vacuum requirements, see Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-3.7.3 Pre-Procedure Patient Care Room or Area

Where a separate pre-procedure patient care room or area is provided, a minimum of one patient care station per procedure room, operating room, Class 2 imaging room, or Class 3 imaging room shall be provided.

2.1-3.7.4 Phase I Post-Anesthesia Recovery Room

2.1-3.7.4.1 A minimum of one Phase I patient care station per operating room or Class 3 imaging room shall be provided.

2.1-3.7.4.2 At least one door to the recovery room shall provide access directly from the semi-restricted area without crossing a public corridor.

2.1-3.7.4.3 The design of the Phase I recovery area shall provide observation of all patient care stations from the nurse station(s).

2.1-3.7.5 Phase II Recovery Room or Area

A minimum of one Phase II patient care station per procedure room, operating room, Class 2 imaging room, or Class 3 imaging room shall be provided.

2.1-3.8 Support Areas for Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.1-3.8.1 Reserved

2.1-3.8.2 Nurse Station

A nurse station shall include the following:

2.1-3.8.2.2 Means for facilitating staff communication

2.1-3.8.2.3 Space for supplies

2.1-3.8.2.4 Accommodations for written or electronic documentation

2.1-3.8.2.5 Hand sanitation dispenser

2.1-3.8.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided as indicated in other sections of this chapter and in the facility type chapters.

2.1-3.8.4 – 2.1-3.8.5 Reserved

2.1-3.8.6 Hand Scrub Facilities

2.1-3.8.6.1 At least one hand scrub position shall be located in the semi-restricted area adjacent to the entrance to each operating room and Class 3 imaging room.

2.1-3.8.6.2 One hand scrub station consisting of two hand scrub positions shall be permitted to serve two Class 3 imaging or operating rooms if located adjacent to the entrance of each room.

2.1-3.8.6.3 The placement of the hand scrub station(s) shall not restrict the minimum required corridor width.

2.1-3.8.7 Handwashing Station

2.1-3.8.7.1 Location

(1) Handwashing stations shall be provided in each room where hands-on patient care is provided.

(2) See other common elements sections and the facility chapters for handwashing station requirements for specific locations.

2.1-3.8.7.2 Design requirements. Handwashing stations shall meet the requirements in the following sections:

(1) ~~For h~~Handwashing station design details~~, see Section~~ shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Architectural Details—Handwashing stations).

(2) ~~For h~~Handwashing station sinks shall meet the requirements~~, see~~ in Section 2.1-8.4.3.2 (Plumbing Fixtures—Handwashing station sinks).

2.1-3.8.7.3 Additional requirements for handwashing stations that serve multiple patient care stations

(1) At least one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patient care stations and for each major fraction thereof.

(2) Based on the arrangement of the patient care stations, handwashing stations shall be evenly distributed.

2.1-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zones

2.1-3.8.8.1 General

(1) Application. Where medication is prepared or dispensed, medication safety zones shall be provided as defined in this section for preparing, dispensing, storing, and administering medications.

(a) The number and location of medication safety zones shall be as determined in the medication safety risk assessment~~. See Section~~ in accordance with Section 1.2-4.5 (Medication Safety Assessment).

(b) A medication preparation room or area, self-contained medication dispensing unit, automated medication-dispensing station, or other system approved by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall be permitted to serve as a medication safety zone.

(2) Design requirements. Medication safety zones shall meet the following physical environment requirements that promote safe medication use:

(a) Medication safety zones shall be located out of circulation paths.

(b) ~~Workspace for m~~Medication safety zones shall be provided in accordance with Section 1.2-4.5 (Medication Safety Assessment) and shall be designed so that staff can access information and perform required tasks. ~~See Section 1.2-4.5 (Medication Safety Assessment).~~

(c) Work counters shall provide space to perform the tasks described in paragraph (b).

(d) Lighting. Task-specific lighting levels for health care settings recommended in the *U.S. Pharmacopeia-National Formulary* shall be used to design lighting.

(e) Where sharps containers are provided, they shall be placed at a height that allows users to see the top of the container.

2.1-3.8.8.2 Work areas for preparing, dispensing, and administering medications

(1) Medication preparation room

(a) The medication preparation room shall contain the following:

(i) Work counter

(ii) Handwashing station

(iii) Lockable refrigerator where drugs requiring refrigeration ~~are used~~will be stored

(iv) Lockable storage for controlled drugs

(v) Sharps containers, where sharps ~~are~~ will be used

(b) Where a medication preparation room is used to store one or more self-contained medication dispensing units, the room shall be designed with space to prepare medication when the self-contained medication-dispensing unit(s) is present.

(c) Where a medication preparation room is used to compound sterile preparations, it shall meet the requirements in USP-NF General Chapter <797> "Pharmaceutical Compounding—Sterile Preparations."

(2) Self-contained medication-dispensing units, automated medication-dispensing stations, or other systems approved by the AHJ

(a) Use of these units or stations shall be permitted in the following locations provided the unit or station can be locked to secure controlled drugs:

(i) At a nurse station

(ii) In a clean workroom

(iii) In an alcove

(b) A handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser shall be provided next to stationary medication-dispensing units or stations.

(c) A countertop or cart shall be provided adjacent to stationary medication-dispensing units or stations.

2.1-3.8.9 Nourishment Area or Room

Where nourishment areas or rooms are provided, they shall have the following:

2.1-3.8.9.1 Handwashing station in or directly accessible to the nourishment room or area

2.1-3.8.9.2 Work counter

2.1-3.8.9.3 Storage

2.1-3.8.9.4 Fixtures and appliances for the beverages and/or nourishment provided in the facility

2.1-3.8.10 Ice-Making Equipment

2.1-3.8.10.1 Where ice-making equipment provides ice designated for human consumption, it shall be of the self-dispensing type.

2.1-3.8.10.2 Where ice-making equipment provides ice designated for treatment purposes, use of storage bin-type equipment for making and dispensing ice shall be permitted. This equipment shall be located in areas restricted to staff.

2.1-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

2.1-3.8.11.1 General.

(1) The determination between the need for a clean workroom, clean supply room or clean supply area shall be based upon the needs of the functional program and an infection control risk assessment.

(2) Clean workrooms and clean supply rooms/areas shall be separate from and have no direct connection with soiled workrooms or soiled holding rooms.

(3) If the determination is made that a room is required, the room shall meet the pressure relationship requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation for Health Care Facilities*.

2.1-3.8.11.2 Clean workroom. Where a clean workroom is provided, it shall contain the following:

(1) Work counter

(2) Handwashing station

(3) Storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies

2.1-3.8.11.3 Clean supply room. A room used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials does not require a work counter or a handwashing station.

2.1-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.1-3.8.12.1 General. Soiled workrooms or soiled holding rooms shall not have a direct connection with clean workrooms or clean supply rooms.

2.1-3.8.12.2 Soiled workroom

(1) Where a soiled workroom is provided, it shall contain the following:

(a) Handwashing station

(b) Flushing-rim clinical service sink or equivalent flushing device where clinical services require bedpan-rinsing, emptying or solidifying suction canisters, or rinsing and gross cleaning of medical instruments

(c) Utility sink where clinical services do not require a flushing-rim fixture

(d) Work counter

(e) Space for separate covered containers for waste and soiled linen

(2) Where a fluid waste management system is used, the following shall be provided in the soiled workroom:

(a) Electrical and plumbing connections that meet manufacturer requirements

(b) Space for the docking station(s)

2.1-3.8.12.3 Soiled holding room. Where a soiled holding room is provided, it shall contain the following:

(1) Handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser

(2) Space for separate covered containers for waste and soiled linen

2.1-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.1-3.8.13.1 – 2.1-3.8.13.2 Reserved

~~**2.1-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair storage and parking space.** See Section 2.1-6.2.6 (Wheelchair Storage and Parking Space) for requirements.~~

2.1-3.8.13.3 Space for wheelchair parking. If the facility provides services requiring patients to transfer to a facility chair, wheelchair, recliner, exam table, or stretcher, a designated area shall be provided for parking at least one wheelchair in a non-public area located outside of any required egress width or other required clearance.

2.1-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage

(1) Storage shall be provided for the emergency equipment used in the facility.

(2) Each storage location shall be readily accessible and under staff control.

(3) Where a battery-powered CPR cart is stored, an electrical outlet for battery charging shall be provided.

2.1-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.1-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

Where a staff lounge is provided, it shall include a handwashing station.

2.1-3.9.2 Reserved

2.1-3.9.3 Storage for Staff

Storage (e.g., locking drawers, cabinets, lockers for staff personal effects) shall be readily accessible to individual work areas.

2.1-3.9.4 Staff Changing Area

2.1-3.9.4.1 Staff changing area(s) shall contain the following:

(1) Lockers

(2) Toilets

(3) Handwashing stations

(4) Space for changing clothes

(5) Provision for separate storage for clean and soiled surgical attire

2.1-3.9.4.2 Staff changing area(s) are unrestricted areas.

2.1-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.1-3.10.1 Reserved

2.1-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.1-3.10.2.1 Patient toilet rooms shall be separate from public use toilet rooms and located to permit access from patient care areas without passing through publicly accessible areas.

2.1-3.10.2.2 Patient toilet rooms shall be equipped with a toilet(s) and a handwashing station(s).

2.1-3.10.2.3 Ligature-resistant design features. Where patient toilet rooms are required to have ligature-resistant design features, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) Architectural details

(a) Toilet room doors

(i) Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, toilet room doors shall be equipped with keyed locks that allow staff to control access to the toilet room.

(ii) Where a swinging door is used, the door to the toilet room shall swing outward or be double-acting.

(b) Hardware and accessories. Special design considerations for injury and suicide prevention shall be given to toilet and sink hardware and accessories, including grab bars and toilet paper holders.

(i) Grab bars

- Grab bars shall be anchored to sustain a concentrated load of 250 pounds (113.4 kilograms).
- Grab bars shall be ligature resistant and designed to facilitate use (i.e., be graspable).

(ii) The following shall not be permitted:

- Towel bars
- Lever handles, except where a specifically designed anti-ligature lever handle is used

(2) Ceilings

(a) A monolithic ceiling shall be provided in the patient toilet room.

(i) The ceiling shall be secured from patient access.

(ii) Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems, other than terminal elements serving the room, shall be concealed above the ceiling.

(b) Ventilation grilles shall be secured using tamper-resistant fasteners and have perforations or openings to eliminate their use as a tie-off point or be designed to prevent them from being used as ligature points.

(c) Ceiling access doors shall be without gaps and secured with a keyed lock and/or tamper-resistant fasteners.

(3) Building system equipment. Light fixtures, fire sprinklers, electrical receptacles, and other appurtenances in the patient toilet room shall be of a tamper- and ligature-resistant type.

2.1-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.1-4.1 Laboratory Services

2.1-4.1.1 General

2.1-4.1.1.1 Facilities for laboratory services provided on-site shall be located in or immediately accessible to the outpatient facility and shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-4.1.1.2 All laboratory equipment requiring permanent connections to power, water, sewer, ventilation, or other utility systems shall be identified in the equipment plan included in the contract documents~~. See Section~~ in accordance with Section 1.4-1.3.1 (Provisions for Equipment) ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-4.1.2 Laboratory Work Areas

2.1-4.1.2.1 Where lab tests are performed on-site, a separate, dedicated room shall be provided. However, tests that are waived by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) under the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) shall be permitted to be performed in areas open to other spaces.

2.1-4.1.2.2 Laboratory workstation

(1) Workstations shall be sized to accommodate the equipment used and, at minimum, shall include the following:

(a) Work counter

(b) Sink(s)

(2) Access to all utility connections required for the equipment used shall be provided.

2.1-4.1.2.3 Handwashing station

(1) At least one handwashing station shall be provided.

(2) Additional handwashing stations shall be provided based on the safety risk assessment.

2.1-4.1.2.4 Special design elements. All work counter(s) in areas used for specimen handling, preparation of specimens or reagents, and laboratory testing shall be constructed of non-porous materials.

2.1-4.1.2.5 Safety and security provisions

(1) Terminal sterilization provisions

(a) Where terminal sterilization of biohazardous waste is performed before transport, space and facilities shall be provided to accommodate the sterilization equipment (e.g., autoclave, electric oven, or other means of terminal sterilization).

(b) If the facility includes a biosafety Level III lab, decontamination methods shall conform to Section IV of the CDC *Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories*.

(2) Radioactive material-handling provisions. Where radioactive materials are employed, facilities for long-term storage and disposal of these materials shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.1-4.1.3 – 2.1-4.1.7 Reserved

2.1-4.1.8 Support Areas for the Laboratory

2.1-4.1.8.1 Storage cabinet or closet. Storage shall be provided for reagents, specimens, flammable materials, acids, bases, and other supplies used in the laboratory.

2.1-4.1.8.2 Specimen collection facilities

(1) In facilities where urine or feces specimens are collected, a toilet room with handwashing station and staff-controlled access shall be provided.

(2) In facilities where drug screening that requires a chain of custody will be performed, the handwashing station shall meet the requirements established in the "Department of Health and Human Services Mandatory Guidelines for Federal Workplace Drug Testing Programs."

(3) Blood collection facilities shall have:

(a) Work counter

(b) Seating space for patients

(c) Handwashing station

(d) Supply storage

2.1-4.1.8.3 Administrative areas. Space for clerical work, filing, and record maintenance and storage shall be provided.

2.1-4.1.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.1-4.1.9.1 Lounge, locker, and toilet facilities shall be readily accessible for laboratory staff.

2.1-4.1.9.2 Location of these areas outside the laboratory area and sharing of these areas with other clinical services shall be permitted.

2.1-4.2 Pharmacy Services

2.1-4.2.1 General

2.1-4.2.1.1 Application

(1) Where pharmacy services are provided in the outpatient facility, facilities shall be provided to accommodate the pharmacy services and associated equipment.

(2) Pharmacy facilities shall be designed to address risks identified in the medication safety assessment and security risk assessment portions of the safety risk assessment.

(3) Satellite pharmacy facilities shall be permitted.

2.1-4.2.1.2 Location. Where clinical services being provided require on-site pharmacy services, a pharmacy room or suite shall be located in the same building.

2.1-4.2.1.3 Medication safety zone design. ~~See Section~~ A medication safety zone shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for general requirements for design of medication safety zones~~.

2.1-4.2.2 Pharmacy Areas

2.1-4.2.2.1 Security. Access to the room or suite shall be controlled.

2.1-4.2.2.2 Dispensing facilities. The following shall be provided where dispensing takes place:

(1) A room or area for receiving, unpacking, and inventory control of materials used in the pharmacy

(2) Work counters and space for automated and/or manual dispensing activities

(3) An area for reviewing and recording prescriptions

(4) An area for temporary storage, exchange, and restocking of carts, where a cart system is used

(5) Security provisions for drugs and personnel in the dispensing counter area commensurate with risks identified in the security risk assessment

2.1-4.2.2.3 Manufacturing facilities. Where drugs are compounded on-site, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(1) The following facilities shall be provided:

(a) A bulk compounding area or patient-specific unit dose compounding area. Such areas shall include:

(i) A sink

(ii) Counter space for drug preparations

(b) Provisions for packaging and labeling

(c) A quality control area

(2) The manufacturing facilities provided shall meet the requirements of:

(a) USP <795>: Pharmaceutical Compounding—Nonsterile Preparations

(b) USP <797>: Pharmaceutical Compounding—Sterile Preparations

(c) USP <800>: Hazardous Drugs—Handling in Healthcare Settings

2.1-4.2.2.4 Storage. Cabinets, shelves, and/or separate rooms or closets shall be provided for the following:

(1) Bulk storage

(2) Active storage

(3) Refrigerated storage

(4) Storage for volatile fluids and alcohol in accordance with applicable fire safety codes for the substances involved

(5) Secured lockable storage for narcotics and controlled drugs

(6) Hazardous drug storage. Where hazardous drugs are part of outpatient pharmacy services, this storage—including refrigerators and freezers that contain hazardous drugs—shall be located in a dedicated room.

(7) Equipment and supply storage for general supplies and equipment not in use

2.1-4.2.3 Sterile Work Areas

Where sterile work areas are provided, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.1-4.2.3.1 General

(1) Layout. The pharmacy shall be laid out to preclude unrelated traffic through the intravenous (IV) and hazardous drug IV preparation rooms.

(2) Where robotic systems are used in the preparation of IV solutions in either the positive pressure IV preparation room or the negative pressure hazardous drug IV prep room, the robotics shall be separate systems and shall not pass from one room to the other.

(3) The compounding area and equipment shall comply with applicable USP and state board of pharmacy requirements.

2.1-4.2.3.2 IV preparation area

(1) Where IV solutions are prepared in the pharmacy, a sterile work area with a laminar-flow workstation designed for product protection shall be provided.

(2) The laminar-flow workstation shall have a visible pressure gauge.

2.1-4.2.3.3 Hazardous drug IV preparation room. A separate room shall be provided for preparation of hazardous drug IV admixtures under a Class II (Type A2, B1, or B2) or Class III biological safety cabinet.

2.1-4.2.4 – 2.1-4.2.7 Reserved

2.1-4.2.8 Support Areas for the Pharmacy

2.1-4.2.8.1 Access to information

(1) Patient information. Provision shall be made for cross-checking medication and drug profiles of individual patients.

(2) Pharmacological information. Provision shall be made for access to poison control, reaction data, and drug information.

2.1-4.2.8.2 Office space

(1) A separate room or area shall be provided for office functions.

(2) For a pharmacy that provides fewer than 450 prescriptions per day, location of administrative workstations in the dispensing area shall be permitted in lieu of an office.

2.1-4.2.8.3 Reserved

2.1-4.2.8.4 Outpatient medication consultation area. If medication is dispensed directly to patients from the pharmacy, an area for consultation and patient education shall be provided.

2.1-4.2.8.5 – 2.1-4.2.8.6 Reserved

2.1-4.2.8.7 Handwashing station.

(1) A handwashing station shall be provided in each ~~either in an anteroom or immediately outside the~~ room where open medication is prepared for administration except where prohibited by USP requirements.

(2) Where a handwashing station is prohibited in a compounding room, a handwashing station shall be provided in an anteroom.

2.1-4.2.8.8 Reserved

2.1-4.2.8.9 Eyewash facilities. Where hazardous drugs will be compounded or manipulated in a way that can produce airborne particles, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.8 (Emergency first-aid equipment) shall be met ~~for eyewash requirements~~.

2.1-4.2.8.10 – 2.1-4.2.8.12 Reserved

2.1-4.2.8.13 Additional equipment and supply storage. If a unit dose procedure is used, additional space and equipment shall be provided to accommodate supplies, packaging, labeling, and storage, including space for carts.

2.1-4.2.9 Support Areas for Staff

Support areas for staff shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9 (Support Areas for Staff) as amended in this section.

2.1-4.2.9.1 Location. These areas shall be permitted to be outside the pharmacy area and shared with other services provided in the outpatient health care facility.

2.1-4.2.9.2 Staff changing area. Where sterile compounding activities are performed in the pharmacy, a staff changing area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area) shall be provided.

2.1-4.3 Sterile Processing

Sterile processing facilities required in the facility chapters in Part 2 shall meet requirements in this section.

2.1-4.3.1 Reserved

2.1-4.3.2 Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing

2.1-4.3.2.1 General

(1) Application

(a) Where sterile processing is provided on-site, sterile processing facilities that comply with Section 2.1-4.3.2.2 (Two-room sterile processing facility) shall be provided with the following exception:

(b) Where sterilization equipment is limited to a table-top or similar-sized sterilizer(s), provision of a one-room sterile processing facility that complies with Section 2.1-4.3.2.3 (One-room sterile processing facility) shall be permitted.

(2) The sterile processing facility shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area.

(3) Layout. Sterile processing facilities shall be designed to provide a one-way traffic pattern.

2.1-4.3.2.2 Two-room sterile processing facility

(1) General

(a) The two-room sterile processing facility shall consist of a decontamination room and a clean workroom that are physically separated by a wall containing ~~a~~ one of the following:

(i) A door or pass-through window that can be closed and secured ~~or~~

(ii) A~~a~~ built-in washer/disinfector with a pass-through door or window.

(b) Space for maintaining the sterilizing equipment shall be provided according to the manufacturer's requirements.

(2) Decontamination room

(a) The decontamination room shall be sized to accommodate the minimum space and clearances needed for the equipment used.

(b) In addition to space for equipment, the decontamination room shall contain the following:

(i) Work counter

(ii) Handwashing station

(iii) Three-basin sink with counter

(iv) Flushing-rim clinical sink or equivalent fixture unless alternative methods for disposal of bio-waste are provided

(v) Space for waste and soiled linen receptacles

(vi) Documentation area

(vii) Instrument air outlet or portable compressed air for drying instruments. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(viii) Storage for decontamination supplies and personal protective equipment (PPE)

(ix) Eyewash station where required by the documents cited in Section 2.1-8.4.3.8 (Emergency first-aid equipment)

(3) Clean workroom

(a) The clean workroom shall be sized to accommodate the space and clearances needed for the sterilization equipment used.

(b) In addition to space for equipment, the clean workroom shall contain the following:

(i) Work counter(s)

(ii) Handwashing station

(iii) Eyewash station where required by the documents cited in Section 2.1-8.4.3.8 (Emergency first-aid equipment)

(iv) Storage for sterilization supplies

(v) Documentation area

(vi) Instrument air outlet or portable compressed air as required by equipment used to dry instruments. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(vii) Cooling area for sterilization cart where the sterilizer is loaded/unloaded using a rolling cart

(4) Sterile storage. A sterile storage space shall be provided for storage of sterile instruments and supplies.

(a) This space shall be permitted to be in the clean workroom or a separate storage room.

(b) Space for case cart storage shall be provided where case carts are used.

2.1-4.3.2.3 One-room sterile processing facility

(1) General. The one-room sterile processing facility shall consist of a decontamination area and a clean work area.

(a) Location of the clean work area in an alcove or in a clean workroom as described in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) shall be permitted provided decontamination takes place in a readily accessible soiled workroom as described in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

(b) One-room sterile processing facilities shall be permitted to have one entrance provided it is located approximately equidistant from the clean and decontamination sides of the room and allows for a one-way traffic flow.

(2) Decontamination area

(a) The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

(i) Countertop

(ii) Two-basin sink for washing instruments

(iii) Handwashing station separate from the instrument-washing sink

(iv) Storage for supplies

(v) Instrument air outlet or portable compressed air as required by equipment used to dry instruments. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities)

(b) To avoid splash, the instrument-washing sink shall be separated from the clean work area by either a 4-foot (1.22-meter) distance from the edge of the sink or a separating wall or screen. If a screen is used, it shall extend a minimum of 4 feet (1.22 meters) above the sink rim.

(3) Clean work area. The clean work area shall be equipped with the following:

(a) Countertop

(b) Sterilizer as required for the services provided

(c) Storage for supplies

(d) Instrument air outlet or portable compressed air as required by equipment used to dry instruments. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-4.3.2.4 Equipment and supply storage

(1) Instrument and supply storage. Storage shall be provided for sterile and clean instruments and supplies.

(a) This storage shall be permitted to be a separate room or a portion of the clean workroom.

(b) Space for case cart storage shall be provided where case carts are used.

(c) Storage for clean/sterile packs shall include provisions to maintain humidity and temperature levels specified by the manufacturer(s) of the materials being stored.

(2) Clean/sterile medical/surgical supply receiving room or area. A room or area shall be provided for receiving/unpacking clean/sterile supplies received from outside the department or facility.

2.1-4.3.2.5 Support areas for staff. Where a staff changing area is provided for sterile processing staff, the staff changing area shall:

(1) Meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area).

(2) Be permitted to be shared with other staff in the same facility.

2.1-4.3.3 Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Sterile Processing

Where sterile processing services are provided off-site, the following on-site support spaces shall be provided:

2.1-4.3.3.1 A room for clean/sterile medical/surgical supply receiving~~. See Section~~ shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-4.3.2.4 (2) (Clean/sterile medical/surgical supply receiving room or area) ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-4.3.3.2 A room for on-site storage of clean and sterile supplies~~. See Section~~ shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-4.3.2.4 (1) (Instrument and supply storage) ~~for requirements~~.

2.1-4.3.3.3 A room for gross decontamination and holding of instruments

(1) This room shall contain an instrument-washing sink for gross decontamination. Use of a handwashing station shall not be permitted for this function.

(2) The soiled workroom described in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be permitted to serve this purpose.

2.1-4.4 Linen Services

2.1-4.4.1 Reserved

2.1-4.4.2 On-Site Linen Processing Area

Where linen is processed on-site, the following shall be provided:

2.1-4.4.2.1 Dedicated linen processing area

(1) This area shall be large enough to accommodate the following equipment:

(a) Washer(s)

(b) Dryer(s)

(c) Any plumbing equipment needed to meet the temperature requirements of the washer manufacturer

(2) The area shall be divided into distinct soiled (sorting and washing) and clean (drying and folding) areas.

2.1-4.4.2.2 Storage for laundry supplies

2.1-4.4.2.3 Clean linen storage

2.1-4.4.2.4 Handwashing station

2.1-4.4.3 Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Laundry Services

Where linen is processed off-site, the following support areas shall be provided in the outpatient facility:

2.1-4.4.3.1 Soiled linen holding area or dedicated area for soiled laundry cart(s)

2.1-4.4.3.2 Clean linen storage area or dedicated area for clean linen cart(s)

2.1-5 Building Support Facilities

2.1-5.1 Materials Management

2.1-5.1.1 Support Areas for Shared/Purchased Services

Use of shared or purchased materials management services shall be permitted as long as on-site handling and storage areas are provided to meet the facility's needs.

2.1-5.1.2 Receiving Facilities

2.1-5.1.2.1 An unpacking or box breakdown area shall be accessible from the designated delivery door.

2.1-5.1.2.2 The receiving area shall be segregated from waste collection and storage facilities.

2.1-5.1.3 Service Entrance

Where a service entrance is provided for loading and unloading of supplies, it shall be protected from inclement weather.

2.1-5.2 Waste Management

2.1-5.2.1 Waste Collection and Storage Facilities

2.1-5.2.1.1 General. Locations shall be provided for waste collection and storage as identified during project planning.

~~(1) Locations for waste collection and storage shall meet local, state, and federal regulations.~~

(1)~~(2)~~ Where the following are provided in a facility, their locations shall be indicated in the design documents:

(a) Compactor units (for municipal solid waste and recycling)

(b) Balers

(c) Sharps disposal containers

(d) Recycling containers

(2)~~(3)~~ Waste collection and storage spaces for the following types of waste produced by the facility shall be provided and indicated in the design documents:

(a) Municipal solid waste

(b) Regulated medical waste

(c) Hazardous waste

2.1-5.2.1.2 Space requirements. Size of spaces provided for waste collection and storage shall be based on the following:

(1) Categories and projected volume of waste

(2) Methods for handling and disposing of waste

(3) Length of anticipated storage

2.1-5.2.1.3 Regulated waste holding spaces

(1) Secured space shall be provided for regulated medical waste and other regulated waste types.

(a) Where provided as interior spaces, areas for temporary holding of regulated waste shall have cleanable floor and wall surfaces.

(b) Where an exterior holding space is provided, it shall have the following:

(i) Cleanable floor (and wall, where provided) surfaces

(ii) Protection from weather

(iii) Protection from animals

(iv) Protection from vermin infestation

(2) Such holding spaces shall provide:

(a) Illumination to a minimum of 50 foot-candles

(b) Protection from unauthorized entry

(3) Refrigeration requirements for such holding facilities, if provided, shall comply with local and/or state regulations.

2.1-5.2.1.4 Refuse chutes. Where provided, refuse chutes shall meet the requirements of applicable codes and standards.

2.1-5.3 Environmental Services

2.1-5.3.1 Environmental Services Room

2.1-5.3.1.1 Number

(1) A minimum of one environmental services room per floor shall be provided.

(2) Additional environmental services room(s) shall be provided on a floor according to the needs of the areas served.

(3) An environmental services room shall be permitted to serve more than one clinical service area on the same floor.

2.1-5.3.1.2 Environmental services room(s) for facility-based environmental services. Each environmental services room shall be provided with the following:

(1) Service sink or floor-mounted mop sink

(2) Provisions for storage of supplies and housekeeping equipment

(3) Handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser

2.1-5.3.1.3 Security. A means of securing each environmental services room from unauthorized access shall be provided.

2.1-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

2.1-5.4.1 General

Shared engineering services and maintenance facilities shall be permitted.

2.1-5.4.2 Equipment Locations

2.1-5.4.2.1 Equipment rooms. Equipment rooms for HVAC equipment, telecommunications equipment, and electrical equipment shall be provided for the equipment included.

2.1-5.4.2.2 Equipment security

(1) Equipment rooms shall be secured with controlled access.

(2) Mechanical and electrical equipment installed outside the building structure shall be secure from unauthorized access.

2.1-5.4.3 Equipment and Supply Storage

Where building maintenance and equipment supplies are stored on-site, a storage room(s) for building maintenance supplies and equipment shall be provided.

2.1-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.1-6.1 Reserved

2.1-6.2 Public Areas

The following shall be provided:

2.1-6.2.1 Vehicular Drop-Off and Pedestrian Entrance

2.1-6.2.1.1 A minimum of one building entrance shall be reachable from grade level.

2.1-6.2.1.2 Building entrances used for patient access shall be clearly marked.

2.1-6.2.1.3 Building entrances that provide patient access to outpatient services shall be located so patients need not go through other activity areas. (Shared lobbies shall be permitted in multi-occupancy buildings.)

2.1-6.2.2 Reception

2.1-6.2.2.1 A reception and information counter, desk, or kiosk shall be provided either at the main entry or at each clinical service.

2.1-6.2.2.2 At least one hand sanitation dispenser shall be provided.

2.1-6.2.3 Waiting Area or Room

2.1-6.2.3.1 The number and location of waiting area(s) or room(s) and associated seating needed to support the operational model of the health care organization shall be determined and designated in the project planning documents.

2.1-6.2.3.2 The waiting area shall be visible from a staff area, either by camera or direct line of sight.

2.1-6.2.3.3 Public toilet room

(1) Toilet room(s) for public use shall be readily accessible from the waiting area without passing through patient care or staff work areas.

(2) Placement of public toilet room(s) off a public corridor in a multi-tenant building shall be permitted.

2.1-6.2.4 Access to Public Communications Services

Access to public communications services shall be provided.

2.1-6.2.5 Access to Drinking Water

Access to drinking water shall be provided.

2.1-6.2.6 Space for Wheelchair Storage ~~and Parking Space~~

~~**2.1-6.2.6.1 Storage.**~~ Where a wheelchair(s) owned by the ~~health care organization~~ facility is made available for patient use, a designated area located out of the required corridor width and directly accessible to the entrance shall be provided for at least one wheelchair.

~~**2.1-6.2.6.2 Parking.** If the facility provides services that require patients to transfer to a facility chair, wheelchair, recliner, exam table, or stretcher, a designated area shall be provided for parking at least one patient-owned wheelchair in a non-public area located out of any required egress width or other required clearance.~~

2.1-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.1-6.3.1 Reserved

2.1-6.3.2 Interview Space

(1) Where provided, space(s) for private interviews shall be separate from public areas.

(2) Shared use of an office or consultation room for this purpose shall be permitted.

2.1-6.3.3 General or Individual Office Space

Office space for business, administrative, and professional staffs shall be provided to support the services provided.

2.1-6.3.4 Reserved

2.1-6.3.5 Medical Records

Provisions shall be made for securing medical records of all media types used by the facility.

2.1-6.3.5.1 Location. To maintain confidentiality of records, the medical records area shall be restricted to staff access.

2.1-6.3.5.2 Space requirements

(1) Space shall be provided for medical records management.

(2) Physical space requirements for electronic storage of forms or documents shall be coordinated with electronic medical records personnel from the facility.

2.1-6.3.6 Equipment and Supply Storage

Storage for office equipment and supplies shall be provided.

2.1-6.3.7 Support Areas for Administrative Staff

~~See Section~~ Support areas for staff shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.9 (Support Areas for Staff), except Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area)~~, for requirements~~.

2.1-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.1-7.1 Building Codes and Standards

Building design and construction shall comply with local, state, and federal requirements.

2.1-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

2.1-7.2.1 Reserved

2.1-7.2.2 Architectural Details

2.1-7.2.2.1 Corridor width

(1) Corridor widths shall meet applicable life safety and building code requirements.

(2) Corridors used for stretcher and gurney transport shall have a minimum corridor or aisle width of 6 feet (1.83 meters).

2.1-7.2.2.2 Ceiling height. The minimum ceiling height shall be 7 feet 10 inches (2.39 meters), with the following exceptions:

(1) The minimum ceiling height in corridors and in normally unoccupied spaces shall not be less than 7 feet 6 inches (2.29 meters).

(2) The minimum height above the floor of suspended tracks, rails, and pipes located in the traffic path shall be 7 feet 6 inches (2.29 meters).

2.1-7.2.2.3 Doors and door hardware

(1) Door type

(a) All doors between corridors, rooms, or spaces subject to occupancy shall be of the swing type or shall be sliding doors.

(b) Sliding doors

(i) Use of manual or automatic sliding doors shall be permitted where fire and other emergency exiting requirements are not compromised.

(ii) Sliding doors with emergency breakaway features in the full open position shall be permitted to temporarily restrict the minimum corridor width required by applicable building codes where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

(iii) Sliding doors in patient care areas shall not have floor tracks.

(2) Door openings

(a) Door openings serving occupiable spaces shall have a minimum clear width of 32 inches (81.28 centimeters).

(b) The minimum clear door opening for rooms where gurneys will be used shall have these dimensions:

(i) 41.5 inches (1.05 meters) in width

(ii) 79.5 inches (2.02 meters) in height

(3) Door swing

(a) Doors shall not be permitted to swing into corridors except doors in behavioral and mental health facilities and doors to non-occupiable spaces (e.g., environmental services rooms, electrical closets) and doors with emergency breakaway hardware.

(b) Doors shall be permitted to swing outward into an alcove that is deeper than the width of the door.

(c) A 180-degree door swing shall not be exempt from this requirement.

(4) Door hardware. Lever hardware or push/pull latch hardware shall be provided.

(5) Doors for patient toilet rooms

(a) Door type. Rooms that contain a toilet for patient use shall have one of the following:

(i) A door that swings outward

(ii) A door equipped with emergency rescue hardware

(iii) A sliding door other than a pocket door

(b) Door opening. Where a toilet room opens onto a public area or corridor, visual privacy shall be maintained.

2.1-7.2.2.4 – 2.1-7.2.2.7 Reserved

2.1-7.2.2.8 Handwashing stations

(1) General

(a) Hand sanitation dispensers and handwashing stations shall be provided.

(b) The number and placement of both handwashing stations and hand sanitation dispensers shall be determined by an ICRA.

(c) ~~See Section~~ Handwashing stations shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) and the facility chapters in Part 2 ~~for information about locations where handwashing stations are required~~.

(2) Sinks. ~~For basin, fitting, and anchoring requirements, see Section~~ Basins, fittings, and anchoring shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.2 (Handwashing station sinks).

(3) Handwashing station countertops

(a) Handwashing station countertops shall be made of porcelain, stainless steel, solid-surface materials, or plastic laminate assembly.

(b) For countertops that require a substrate, ~~marine-grade plywood (or an equivalent material)~~materials that maintain structural integrity when exposed to moisture with an impervious seal, shall be required.

(4) Where a handwashing station includes casework, it shall be designed to prevent storage beneath the sink.

(5) Provisions for drying hands. Single-use or disposable provisions for hand drying shall be required at all handwashing stations except hand scrub facilities.

(a) Handwashing stations shall include a hand-drying device that does not require hands to contact the dispenser.

(b) These provisions shall be enclosed to protect against dust or soil.

(c) Hot air dryers shall be permitted.

(d) Where provided, single-use towels shall be directly accessible to sinks.

(6) Cleansing agents. Handwashing stations shall include liquid or foam soap dispensers.

(7) Mirror. Mirrors shall be permitted at handwashing sinks in public toilet rooms and in shower rooms.

2.1-7.2.2.9 Grab bars. Where provided, grab bars shall comply with local, state, and federal requirements referenced in Section 1.1-4.1 (Design Standards for Accessibility) as amended in this section.

(1) Grab bars shall be anchored to sustain a concentrated load of 250 pounds (113.4 kilograms).

(2) Ends of grab bars shall be constructed to prevent snagging the clothes of patients, staff, and visitors.

2.1-7.2.2.10 Handrails. Where provided, handrails shall comply with local, state, and federal requirements referenced in Section 1.1-4.1 (Design Standards for Accessibility) as amended in this section.

(1) Rail ends shall return to the wall or floor.

(2) Handrail gripping surfaces and fasteners shall be smooth (free of sharp or abrasive elements) with a 1/8-in. (3.18-millimeter) minimum radius.

(3) Handrails shall have eased edges and corners.

(4) Handrail finishes shall be cleanable.

2.1-7.2.2.11 Radiation protection

(1) Radiation protection for X-ray and gamma ray installations shall conform with the following National Council on Radiation Protection & Measurements (NCRP) reports and local, state, and federal codes and standards.

(a) Report No. 102: *Medical X-Ray, Electron Beam and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies Up to 50 MeV (Equipment Design, Performance and Use)*

(b) Report No. 147: *Structural Shielding Design for Medical X-Ray Imaging Facilities*

(c) Report No. 151: *Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation for Megavoltage X- and Gamma-Ray Radiotherapy Facilities*

(2) ~~See Section 2.1-3.5.1.2~~The requirements in Section 2.3-1.2 (Radiation Protection) shall be met~~. for further requirements.~~

2.1-7.2.2.12 Reserved

2.1-7.2.2.13 Protection from heat-producing equipment. Rooms containing heat-producing equipment (e.g., boilers, heaters) shall be insulated to prevent the temperature in adjacent rooms from falling outside the intended design parameters for those room types.

2.1-7.2.2.14 Decorative water features

(1) Installation of indoor, unsealed (open) water features shall not be permitted in the confines of the ~~licensed~~ outpatient health care ~~occupancy~~ area.

(2) Covered fish tanks shall be permitted in public areas of the ~~licensed~~ outpatient health care ~~occupancy~~ area.

2.1-7.2.3 Surfaces

2.1-7.2.3.1 Flooring and wall bases

(1) Flooring surfaces shall be cleanable and wear-resistant for the location.

(2) The use of carpeting in patient care areas and clinical support areas (e.g., labs and pharmacies) shall be permitted when approved as part of the infection control risk assessment (ICRA) process.

(3) Smooth transitions shall be provided between different flooring materials.

(4) Flooring surfaces, including those on stairways, shall be stable, firm, and slip-resistant.

(a) The slip-resistance ratings of flooring surfaces shall be appropriate for the area of use—for dry or wet conditions and for use on ramps and slopes.

(b) Where carpeting will be installed, it shall provide a stable and firm surface.

(5) The floors and wall bases of soiled workrooms, toilet rooms, and other areas subject to frequent wet cleaning shall be constructed of materials that are not physically affected by germicidal or other types of cleaning solutions.

(6) Floor and wall base assemblies

(a) The room types listed in this section shall have floor and wall base assemblies that are monolithic and have an integral coved wall base that is carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches (15.24 centimeters) and is tightly sealed to the wall.

(i) Operating room

(ii) Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms

(iii) Procedure rooms where cystoscopy, urology, and endoscopy procedures are performed

(iv) Endoscope processing room

(v) IV and chemotherapy preparation rooms

(vi) Airborne infection isolation (AII) room

(vii) Anteroom to AII room, where provided

(viii) Sterile processing facility

(ix) Soiled workroom and soiled holding room

(x) Pharmacy compounding room and anteroom

(xi) Trauma room in freestanding emergency facility

(b) Equipment shall be permitted to penetrate these monolithic floors provided joints are sealed and do not represent a tripping hazard.

(7) Floor openings for pipes, ducts, and conduits as well as joints at structural elements shall be tightly sealed.

2.1-7.2.3.2 Walls and wall protection

(1) Wall finishes

(a) Wall finishes shall be ~~washable~~cleanable.

(b) Wall finishes in the vicinity of plumbing fixtures shall be:

(i) Smooth

(ii) ~~Scrubbable~~Able to be cleaned and disinfected

(iii) Water-resistant

(c) Wall finishes in the following room types shall be free of fissures, open joints, or crevices that may retain or permit passage of dirt particles:

(i) Operating and procedure rooms

(ii) Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms

(iii) Endoscopy procedure room

(iv) Endoscope processing room

(v) IV and chemotherapy preparation room

(vi) Airborne infection isolation (AII) room

(vii) Anteroom to AII room, where provided

(viii) Sterile processing facility

(2) Wall surfaces in areas routinely subjected to wet spray or splatter (e.g., kitchens, environmental services rooms) shall be monolithic or have sealed seams that are tight and smooth.

(3) Wall openings for pipes, ducts, and conduits as well as joints at structural elements shall be tightly sealed.

(4) Wall protection devices and corner guards shall be durable and scrubbable.

2.1-7.2.3.4 Cabinetry, casework, and countertops

(1) Cabinetry, casework, and countertops shall have flush surfaces that are smooth, nonporous, cleanable, and durable and that do not scratch easily.

(2) Surface and furnishing assembly seams and joints shall be smooth and fully sealed to support effective cleaning and disinfection and reduce wear and degradation and shall be able to remain intact and functional during the proposed service life of the assembly.

2.1-7.2.3.3 Ceilings

(1) Ceilings shall be provided in all areas except as noted in Section 2.1-7.2.3.3 (4) (Mechanical, electrical, and communications equipment rooms).

(a) Ceilings shall be cleanable with routine housekeeping equipment.

(b) Acoustic and lay-in ceilings, where used, shall not create ledges or crevices.

(2) Semi-restricted areas

(a) Ceiling finishes in semi-restricted areas shall be:

(i) Smooth and without crevices

(ii) Scrubbable

(iii) Non-absorptive

(iv) Non-perforated

(v) Capable of withstanding cleaning with chemicals

(b) Where a lay-in ceiling is provided, it shall be gasketed or each ceiling tile shall weigh at least one pound per square foot.

(c) Use of perforated, tegular, serrated, or highly textured tiles shall not be permitted in semi-restricted areas.

(3) Restricted areas

(a) Ceilings in restricted areas shall be of monolithic construction.

(i) Cracks or perforations in these ceilings shall not be permitted.

(ii) The central diffuser array shall not be considered part of a monolithic ceiling.

(b) Use of a modular or prefabricated ~~laminar (or controlled) flow~~ ceiling system shall be permitted in operating rooms and Class 3 imaging rooms in place of monolithic ceiling construction where the following conditions are met:

(i) Seams and access doors shall be continuously gasketed.

(ii) The assembly shall be built with a structural frame engineered and rated for the systems supported and equipped with seismic bracing as required.

(iii) Accommodations shall be made to provide access for testing, maintenance, and replacement of items.

(iv) Diffuser arrangement and airflow design shall be compliant with ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*.

(v) Devices and related controls shall be UL/ETL labeled, as applicable.

(c) Ceiling finishes shall be able to be cleaned and disinfected~~ion scrubbable and capable of withstanding cleaning and/or disinfecting chemicals~~.

(d) All access openings in ceilings in restricted areas shall be gasketed.

(4) Mechanical, electrical, and communications equipment rooms. Omission of suspended ceilings in these rooms or spaces shall be permitted unless required for fire safety purposes.

2.1-7.2.4 Furnishings

2.1-7.2.4.1 Reserved

2.1-7.2.4.2 Window treatments in patient care areas

(1) Blinds, sheers, or other window treatment combinations shall be provided to allow for patient privacy, diffuse daylight, and control light levels and glare in patient care areas.

(2) Window treatments shall not compromise patient safety and shall be easy for patients, visitors, and staff to operate.

(3) Window treatments shall be selected for ease of cleaning, disinfection, or sanitization.

(4) Use of fabric drapes and curtains for window treatments shall be permitted if the fabric is cleanable~~washable~~.

2.1-7.2.4.3 Privacy curtains in patient care areas

(1) Use of fabric privacy curtains shall be permitted if the fabric is cleanable.

(2) Use of disposable privacy curtains shall be permitted.

2.1-8 Building Systems

2.1-8.1 Reserved

2.1-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

2.1-8.2.1 General

2.1-8.2.1.1 The following facility types shall comply with Part 3 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*):

(1) Outpatient surgery facilities

(2) Endoscopy facilities

(3) Freestanding emergency care facilities

2.1-8.2.1.2 For the following facility types, room types listed in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) of ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170 shall meet the requirements of Standard 170:

(1) Imaging facilities with Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms

(2) Infusion centers

(3) Renal dialysis centers

(4) Mobile/transportable units

2.1-8.2.1.3 For other outpatient facility types, room types listed in Table 8-2 (Design Parameters—General Outpatient Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170 shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE 170.

[**NOTE:** Section below relocated from 2.2-8.2.2]

2.1-8.2.2 Special Ventilation and Exhaust Systems

2.1-8.2.2.1 Where processes that create hazardous particulates (e.g., cast removal, cauterization, ~~medical procedures that produce plumes,~~ prosthetic dental grinding or polishing) are conducted, the room shall meet the requirements for "laboratory work area—general" as well as those for their designated use in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in Part 3 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*).

2.1-8.2.2.2 Exhaust systems shall be designed to meet all applicable codes and industry guidelines and standards, including but not limited to Occupational Safety and Health Administration and ACGIH (American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists) requirements for exhaust ventilation.

2.1-8.2.~~2~~3 Additional Requirements

See Section 8.2 in the following chapters for additional HVAC information:

2.1-8.2.~~2~~3.1 Chapter 2.2, Specific Requirements for General and Specialty Medical Services Facilities

2.1-8.2.~~2~~3.2 Chapter 2.13~~2.11~~, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Facilities

2.1-8.2.~~2~~3.3 Chapter 2.17~~2.14~~, Specific Requirements for Mobile~~/Transportable Medical~~ Units

2.1-8.3 Electrical Systems

2.1-8.3.1 General

2.1-8.3.1.1 Applicable standards

~~(1)~~ All electrical material and equipment, including conductors, controls, and signaling devices, shall be listed, installed, and tested in compliance with applicable sections of:

(a) NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*

(b) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*

~~(2) All electrical material and equipment shall be listed as complying with available standards of listing agencies or other similar established standards where such standards are required.~~

2.1-8.3.1.2 Testing and Documentation. Electrical power and low-voltage installations shall be tested and documented to demonstrate that equipment installation and operation is appropriate and functional.

2.1-8.3.2 Electrical Power Distribution and Transmission

2.1-8.3.2.1 Switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, transformers, and automatic transfer switches

(1) Location. Switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, transformers, and automatic transfer switches shall be:

~~(a) Located in a room or enclosure that meets the requirements of NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code.*~~

(a) Located in an environment designed to meet the temperature and humidity requirements of the equipment.

(b) Accessible to authorized persons only.

~~(c) Located in dry, ventilated spaces free of hazardous materials as defined in NFPA 704: *Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response.*~~

(2) Overcurrent protective devices shall be listed for the ambient room temperature for the space in which they are installed.

2.1-8.3.2.2 Panelboards

~~(1) All panelboards shall be accessible to the health care tenants they serve.~~

(1) Where panelboards serving life safety branch circuits are required, they shall be permitted to serve floors immediately above and immediately below the level where the panel is located.

(2) Where panelboards serving critical branch circuits are required, they shall be located on each floor where services are provided.

~~(3) Where panelboards serving life safety branch circuits are required, they shall be permitted to serve floors immediately above and/or immediately below the level where the panel is located.~~

(3)~~(4)~~ New panelboards shall not be located in exit enclosures or exit pathways~~passageways~~.

(4) All panelboards shall be accessible to the health care tenants they serve.

2.1-8.3.2.3 Ground-fault circuit interrupters

(1) Ground-fault circuit interrupters (GFCIs) shall comply with NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*.

(2) Operating rooms

(a) Where GFCIs are used in an operating room, each single or duplex receptacle shall be a stand-alone GFCI receptacle.

(b) Where GFCI breakers are used, no more than one single or duplex receptacle shall be connected to an individual GFCI breaker.

(c) GFCI receptacles and isolated power shall not both be used in the same operating room.

2.1-8.3.3 Power-Generating and -Storing Equipment

2.1-8.3.3.1 Essential electrical system ~~or emergency electrical power~~

(1) Where required by NFPA 99, an essential electrical system shall be provided in the outpatient facility.

(2) Where required, the emergency power system shall be provided in accordance with the following:

(a) NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*

(b) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*

~~(2) Where required by NFPA 70, an emergency power system shall be provided in the outpatient facility.~~

~~(3) The following codes shall be consulted for requirements:~~

~~(a) NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*~~

~~(b) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*~~

~~(c) NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*~~

~~(d) NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*~~

~~(e) NFPA 111: *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*~~

2.1-8.3.4 Lighting

2.1-8.3.4.1 Reserved

2.1-8.3.4.2 Lighting for specific locations in outpatient facilities

(1) Exam,~~/~~treatment,~~/trauma~~ and procedure rooms. A portable or fixed exam light shall be provided for exam, treatment, and ~~trauma~~ procedure rooms.

(2) Operating and trauma rooms

(a) Operating and trauma rooms shall have general lighting in addition to special lighting units provided at surgical tables.

(b) Power for general lighting and special lighting shall be supplied by separate circuits.

(3) Medication safety zone work areas and pharmacy areas. ~~See Section~~ Lighting in medication safety zones and pharmacy areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.8.1 (2)(d) (Medication safety zones: Design requirements—Lighting) ~~for lighting requirements for medication safety zones and pharmacy areas~~.

(4) Patient care areas. Uplights or luminaires that create a ledge that can collect dust and debris shall be provided with a flat or lensed surface.

2.1-8.3.5 Electrically Powered Equipment

2.1-8.3.5.1 Power for handwashing station sinks and scrub sinks. Where an essential electrical system is provided, any required handwashing station or scrub sink that depends on the building electrical service for operation shall be connected to the essential electrical system.

2.1-8.3.5.2 Power for x-ray equipment. Fixed and mobile X-ray equipment installations shall conform to requirements in NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*.

2.1-8.3.5.3 Power for inhalation anesthetizing locations. At locations where anesthesia is administered, all electrical equipment and devices, receptacles, and wiring shall comply with applicable sections of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* and NFPA 70.

2.1-8.3.6 Electrical Receptacles

Receptacles in patient care areas shall be provided according to Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-8.4 Plumbing Systems

2.1-8.4.1 General

Unless otherwise specified herein, all plumbing systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with the locally adopted plumbing code.

2.1-8.4.2 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems

2.1-8.4.2.1 General piping and valves

(1) All piping, except control-line tubing, shall be identified.

(2) All valves shall be tagged, and a valve schedule shall be provided to the facility owner for permanent record and reference.

(3) No plumbing piping shall be exposed overhead or on walls where possible accumulation of dust or soil may create a cleaning problem or where leaks would create a potential for food contamination.

(4) Dead legs shall have a method of flushing.

2.1-8.4.2.2 ~~Reserved~~ Hemodialysis/hemoperfusion water distribution

(1) General

(a) In new construction and renovation in any facility where hemodialysis or hemoperfusion is routinely performed, the following shall be provided:

(i) Separate treated water distribution system

(ii) Drainage system independent from the tap water

(b) If the dialysis equipment used includes sufficient water treatment provisions, use of domestic cold water without special piping (rather than a separate treated water system) shall be permitted.

(2) Treated water distribution system. Where provided, a separate treated water distribution system shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The treated water system shall be in accordance with ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: *Preparation and Quality Management of Fluids for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies—Part 2: Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies*.

(b) Treated water distribution outlets shall be provided for these areas:

(i) Each individual hemodialysis patient care station

(ii) Hemodialysis equipment repair area

(iii) Dialysate preparation area

(c) Treated water systems for hemodialysis and related therapies shall meet the current requirements of ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-3: *Preparation and Quality Management of Fluids for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies—Part 3: Water for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies*.

(3) Dialysis equipment or water system components shall meet FDA 510 (k) approval and the requirements of class 2 medical devices.

(4) The liquid waste and disposal system for the hemodialysis treatment area shall be designed to minimize odor and prevent backflow.

(5) All hemodialysis distribution piping shall be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance.

(6) Where provided, hemodialysis wall boxes shall be installed in such a way to not interfere with flushing, cleaning and disinfection of surfaces, or maintenance of waste drain.

2.1-8.4.2.3 Potable water supply systems

(1) Capacity

(a) Systems shall be designed to supply water at sufficient pressure to operate all fixtures and equipment during maximum demand.

(b) Supply capacity for hot- and cold-water piping shall be determined on the basis of fixture units, using recognized engineering standards.

(c) Where the ratio of plumbing fixtures to occupants is proportionally more than required by the building occupancy and is in excess of 1,000 plumbing fixture units, use of a diversity factor to calculate capacity is permitted.

(2) Valves. Each water service main, branch main, riser, and branch to a group of fixtures shall have shutoff valves.

(a) Shutoff valves shall be provided for each fixture.

(b) Access shall be provided for all valve locations.

(c) Valves shall be tagged, and a valve schedule shall be provided to the owner/operator for permanent record and reference.

(3) Backflow prevention, where required by local codes or medical equipment manufacturers

(a) Systems shall be protected against cross-connection in accordance with AWWA M14: *Backflow Prevention and Cross-Connection Control: Recommended Practices* or *The International Association of Plumbing & Mechanical Official's (IAPMO) Backflow Prevention Reference Manual*.

(b) Vacuum breakers or backflow prevention assemblies or devices shall be installed on hose bibs and supply nozzles used for connection of hoses or tubing in laboratories, housekeeping sinks, etc. in accordance with the *Backflow Prevention Reference Manual*.

(4) Potable water storage vessels (hot and cold) not intended for constant use shall not be installed.

2.1-8.4.2.4 ~~Reserved~~ Non-potable water supply systems

(1) Any non-potable water system piping shall be clearly marked “non-potable.”

(2) Where non-potable water systems in patient care areas are shown to be safe by a safety risk assessment, they shall be permitted.

2.1-8.4.2.5 Heated potable water distribution systems

(1) Provisions based on a risk management plan shall be included in the heated potable water system to limit the amount of *Legionella* bacteria and other opportunistic waterborne pathogens.

(2) Heated potable water distribution systems serving patient care areas shall be under constant recirculation to provide continuous hot water at each hot water outlet. Non-recirculated fixture branch piping shall not exceed 25 feet (7.62 meters) in length.

(3) Elimination of dead-end piping

(a) Installation of dead-end piping (risers with no flow, branches with no fixture) shall not be permitted.

(b) In renovation projects, dead-end piping shall be removed.

(c) Installation of empty risers, mains, and branches for future use shall be permitted.

(4) Water temperature

(a) The water-heating system shall supply water at the following range of temperatures: 105–120ºF (41–49ºC). Storage of water at higher temperatures shall be permitted.

(b) For handwashing stations, water shall be permitted to be supplied at a constant temperature between 70°F and 80°F using a single-pipe supply. For showers and other end-use devices requiring heated water, water shall be permitted to be supplied by this low-temperature circulation system and heated with point-of-use heaters.

2.1-8.4.2.6 Drainage systems

(1) Piping

(a) Where drainage piping is installed above the ceiling of, or exposed in, operating rooms, procedure rooms, one-room sterile processing facilities, the clean workroom of a two-room sterile processing facility, pharmacies, Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms, locations housing telecommunications distribution equipment, main switchgear and electrical rooms, and electronic data processing areas, the piping shall have special provisions (e.g., double-wall containment piping) to protect the space below from leakage and condensation.

(b) Where a drip pan is used to meet this requirement, it shall be accessible and have an overflow drain with a labeled outlet located in an area where an overflow occurrence can be observed ~~in a normally occupied room or area that is not open to a restricted area~~.

(2) Floor drains

(a) Floor drains shall not be installed in procedure rooms, operating rooms, Class 2 imaging rooms, or Class 3 imaging rooms with the following exception:

(b) Where a floor drain is installed in a dedicated cystoscopy procedure room, it shall contain a non-splash, horizontal-flow flushing bowl beneath the drain plate that empties into a non-flushing drain with automatic trap primer.

(c) A moisture sensor reporting to the building system to signal a leak from the overflow drain shall be permitted.

(3) Plaster traps

(a) Where a sink is used for disposal of plaster of paris, a plaster trap shall be provided.

(b) Where plaster traps are used, provisions shall be made for access and cleaning.

2.1-8.4.2.7 Condensate drains

(1) Condensate drains for cooling coils shall be a type that may be cleaned as needed without disassembly.

(2) An air gap shall be provided where condensate drains empty into building drains.

(3) Heater elements shall be provided for condensate lines in freezers or other areas where freezing may be a problem.

2.1-8.4.3 Plumbing Fixtures

2.1-8.4.3.1 General

(1) Materials. The material used for plumbing fixtures shall be non-absorptive and capable of withstanding cleaning chemicals and chemicals that will come in contact with the fixture ~~acid-resistant~~.

(2) ~~Clearances~~Faucets

(a) Faucets ~~Waterspouts~~ used in sinks shall have clearances adequate to avoid contaminating utensils and the contents of carafes, etc.

(b) Faucets shall be located so there is at least 1 inch (2.54 centimeters) between any part of the faucet and/or handles and the surrounding backsplash.

(c) Faucets shall be equipped with pressure compensating, non-aerated stream shaping devices commonly known as laminar spout-end devices.

(i) Laminar stream patterns shall be required.

(ii) Aerated and/or atomized stream patterns shall be prohibited.

(4) Showerheads

(a) Showerheads shall be equipped with pressure compensating flow regulators.

(b) Hoses for hand-held shower wands shall have a minimum 0.3-inch (.76 centimeter) internal diameter.

(c) Either a fixed showerhead or a hand-held showerhead for each showering location shall be specified.

(d) The use of multi-head shower installations shall be prohibited.

(e) Showerheads with the handheld showerhead integrated into the fixed showerhead spray pattern shall be permissible.

(5) Shower and tub/shower valves

(a) Check valves shall be required on the hot and cold piping feeding each shower and tub/shower valve.

(b) Check valves shall be accessible for repair and replacement.

2.1-8.4.3.2 Handwashing station sinks

(1) Sinks in handwashing stations shall be designed with basins and faucets that reduce the risk of splashing to areas where direct patient care is provided, sterile procedures are performed, or medications are prepared.

(2) The sink basin shall have a nominal size of no less than 1 square foot (.09 square meters), with a minimum dimension of 9 inches (22.86 centimeters) in width or length.

(3) Handwashing station sink basins shall be made of porcelain, stainless steel, or solid-surface materials.

(4) Sink basins shall be installed so they fit tightly against the wall or countertop and sealed to prevent water leaks.

(5) The water discharge point of handwashing sink faucets shall be at least 10 inches (25.4 centimeters) above the bottom of the basin.

(6) The water pressure at the fixture shall comply with the locally adopted plumbing code ~~be regulated~~.

(7) Anchoring. Handwashing station sinks shall be anchored to withstand up to 250 pounds (1112N) of vertical or horizontal force at any point on the sink.

(8) Fittings. Handwashing station sinks used by medical and nursing staff, patients, and the public shall have fittings that can be operated without using hands.

(a) Single-lever or wrist-blade devices. Use of these devices shall be permitted.

(i) Blade handles used for this purpose shall be at least 4 inches (10.16 centimeters) in length.

(ii) The location and arrangement of fittings shall provide the clearance required for operation of blade-type handles.

(b) Sensor-regulated water fixtures

(i) These fixtures shall meet user need for temperature and length of time the water flows.

(ii) Electronic faucets shall be capable of functioning during loss of normal power.

(iii) Use of sensor-regulated faucets with manual temperature control shall be permitted.

(iv) Electronic faucets shall be capable of automated or timed flushing.

2.1-8.4.3.3 Showers and tubs

(1) Shower units and tubs shall have nonslip surfaces.

(2) Where provided, soap dishes shall be recessed.

2.1-8.4.3.4 Ice-making equipment. Copper tubing shall be provided for supply connections to ice-making equipment.

2.1-8.4.3.5 Clinical sinks

(1) Clinical sinks shall be trimmed with valves that can be operated without hands.

(a) Single-lever or wrist blade devices shall be permitted.

(b) Handles on clinical sinks shall be at least 6 inches (15.24 centimeters) long.

(2) Clinical sinks shall have an integral trap wherein the upper portion of the water trap provides a visible seal.

2.1-8.4.3.6 Scrub sinks

(1) Freestanding scrub sinks shall be trimmed with foot, knee, or electronic sensor controls.

(2) Single-lever wrist blades shall not be permitted except for the temperature pre-set valve.

2.1-8.4.3.7 Reserved

2.1-8.4.3.8 Emergency first-aid equipment. Quick-drench emergency deluge shower and face and eyewash devices shall be provided where required by the following:

(1) OSHA 29 CFR 1910: Occupational Safety and Health Standards

(2) ANSI/ISEA Z358.1: *American National Standard for Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment*

2.1-8.4.3.9 Hydrotherapy facilities

(1) A dedicated drain shall be provided where portable hydrotherapy units are used.

(2) Handwashing sinks shall not be used as drains for hydrotherapy units.

2.1-8.4.3.10 Water treatment purification system, equipment, and distribution

(1) Where provided, centralized water treatment purification equipment shall be located in a dedicated area with space to access all components of the equipment.

(a) This area shall include a drain.

(b) This area shall be located in a secured space or room.

(c) The requirements of Section 2.1-8.4.3.10 (1) shall not apply to localized water treatment purification assemblies located near the point of use (e.g., filter assemblies used for a single water dispensing station, domestic refrigerator, ice maker, single piece of medical equipment).

(2) The water treatment purification system shall produce water with zero total dissolved solids (TDS), that is chlorine and chemical free, and prevents biofilm and bacterial growth in the water lines.

(3) Installation and maintenance of the treatment purification system shall comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

(4) If water treatment purification systems serve any purpose other than provision of potable water, the system supply and drainage plumbing shall be independent of potable water plumbing systems.

2.1-8.4.4 Medical Gas and Vacuum Systems

Station outlets and vacuum inlets shall be provided as indicated in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-8.4.4.1 Medical gas systems

(1) Where piped medical gas is ~~used~~provided, the design, installation, testing, and certification of nonflammable medical gas and air systems shall comply with the applicable sections ~~requirements~~ of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

(2) Use of portable medical gas shall be permitted as indicated in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-8.4.4.2 Vacuum systems. Where a central clinical vacuum system is provided, design, installation, testing, and certification shall comply with applicable sections of ~~and installation shall be in accordance with~~ NFPA 99.

2.1-8.4.4.3 Instrument air systems. Instrument air systems shall produce air of a quality that complies with ANSI/ISA S7.0.01 *Quality Standard for Instrument Air*.

2.1-8.5 Communications Systems

2.1-8.5.1 Call Functions ~~Systems~~

Nurse call functions ~~stations~~ shall be provided as required in Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Functions ~~Devices~~ in Outpatient Facilities).

2.1-8.5.2 Telecommunications ~~and Information~~ Systems

The requirements in this section shall be applied to outpatient facilities in freestanding buildings or a portion of a building with a separate occupancy classification.

~~**2.1-8.5.2.1** Secured locations for terminating telecommunications and information system devices shall be provided.~~

~~**2.1-8.5.2.2** A central equipment space shall be provided that meets the following manufacturer requirements for the equipment it houses:~~

~~(1) Temperature operating range~~

~~(2) Air filtration~~

~~(3) Humidity operating range~~

~~(4) Power conditioning~~

2.1-8.5.2.1 Entrance facility (EF). The EF houses the point at which the outside carrier or facility campus data and voice circuits and services enter the facility and outdoor cabling interfaces with the building's internal cabling infrastructure.

(1) Number. Each building shall have at least one EF that is dedicated to the telecommunications function and related support facilities and meets all the requirements of this section.

(2) Location and access requirements

(a) Access to the EF shall be restricted.

(b) Combination of the EF and the technology equipment room shall be permitted.

(3) Building system requirements. An HVAC system shall be provided to meet the environmental requirements of the equipment in the EF.

2.1-8.5.2.2 Technology equipment room (TER)

(1) Number. Each building shall have at least one TER space that is not used for any purposes other than data storage, processing, and networking and that meets the minimum requirements of this section.

(2) Size. The TER shall be sized to provide space to meet service requirements for the equipment that will be housed there.

(3) Location and access requirements

(a) In the absence of local requirements, the TER shall be located above any floodways or flood hazard areas as described by the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP).

(b) The TER shall not be located adjacent to exterior curtain walls to prevent wind and water damage.

(c) Access to the TER shall be restricted.

(d) Combination of the TER and the telecommunications service entrance room shall be permitted.

(5) Building system requirements. Mechanical and electrical equipment or fixtures that are not directly related to the support of the TER shall not be installed in or pass through the TER.

2.1-8.5.2.3 Telecommunications room (TR)

(1) Number

(a) There shall be a minimum of one TR on each floor of the facility.

(b) TRs shall be provided throughout the facility as necessary to meet the 295-foot (90-meters) maximum cable distance required for Ethernet cables from the termination point in the TR to each wall outlet.

(2) Size

(a) TRs shall provide a 3-foot (91.44-centimeter) minimum clearance on the front and back of the equipment racks and at the ends of the racks that require access.

(b) Arranging multiple equipment racks in a continuous row shall be permitted.

(3) Location and access requirements

(a) Access to the TR shall be directly off a corridor and not reached through another space, such as an electrical room or mechanical room.

(b) Access to a TR shall be controlled.

(4) Building system requirements

(a) Mechanical and electrical equipment, utilities and fixtures not directly related to the support of the TR shall be permitted to pass through the TR room, providing they do not pass over the top of any equipment in the room.

(b) All circuits serving the TR and the equipment in the TR shall be dedicated to serving the TR.

(c) Temperature control systems in the TR shall be designed to maintain environmental conditions recommended in ASHRAE's *Thermal Guidelines for Data Processing Environments* or the requirements for the specific equipment installed.

2.1-8.5.2.4 Security systems. A security risk assessment meeting the requirements in Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) shall be completed to determine the need for active and passive security systems in general and specialty medical services facilities.

2.1-8.5.2.5 Electronic surveillance systems

(1) Where electronic surveillance systems are provided for the safety of patients, any devices in patient care areas shall be mounted in a tamper-resistant enclosure that is unobtrusive.

(2) Where provided, electronic surveillance system monitoring display screens shall be located so images on the screen are not visible to unauthorized individuals.

(3) If warranted by the safety risk assessment, electronic surveillance systems shall receive power from the essential electrical system or a backup power source in the event of a disruption of normal electrical power.

2.1-8.6 Fire Alarm System

All health care facilities shall be provided with a fire alarm system in accordance with:

2.1-8.6.1 NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*

2.1-8.6.2 NFPA 72: *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*

2.1-8.7 Elevator Systems

2.1-8.7.1 General

Where an outpatient facility is located on more than one floor or on a floor other than an entrance floor at grade level, at least one elevator shall be provided.

2.1-8.7.2 Reserved

2.1-8.7.3 Dimensions

Where outpatients are expected to be transported between different levels on gurneys (e.g., in facilities with operating rooms and recovery rooms on different floors), elevator cars shall have a minimum inside floor dimension of 5 feet 8 inches (1.73 meters) wide by 7 feet 9 inches (2.36 meters) deep.

2.1-8.7.4 Leveling Device

Elevators shall be equipped with a two-way automatic level-maintaining device with an accuracy of ± 1/4 inch (± 6.35 millimeters).

2.1-8.7.5 Elevator Controls

~~**2.1-8.7.5.1** Elevator call buttons and controls shall not be activated by heat or smoke.~~

~~**2.1-8.7.5.2** Light beams, if used for operating door reopening devices without touch, shall be used in combination with door edge safety devices and shall be interconnected with a system of smoke detectors.~~

~~**2.1-8.7.5.3** ~~Elevator controls, alarm buttons, and telephones shall be accessible to wheelchair occupants and usable by the blind.

2.1-8.7.6 Elevator Installation

2.1-8.7.6.1 Elevator installation shall comply with the following:

(1) ASME A17.1/CSA B44: *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators* for new construction

(2) ASME A17.3: *Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators* for existing facilities

2.1-8.7.6.2 See ASCE/SEI 7: *Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures* for seismic design and control system requirements for elevators.

Table 2.1-1: Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities[1]

Section	Room Type	Number of Single Receptacles[2]	Receptacle Locations[3]
2.1-3.2.2	Exam room/observation room	8	4 convenient to head of exam table or gurney or on each lateral side of the imaging gantry
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (2)~~ 2.3-3.2.2	Class 1 imaging room	8	4 convenient to head of exam table or gurney or on each lateral side of the imaging gantry
2.1-3.2.3	Procedure room (including endoscopy)	12[4]	8 convenient to table placement At least 1 on each wall
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (2)~~ 2.3-3.2.3	Class 2 imaging room	12[4]	8 convenient to table placement At least 1 on each wall
2.1-3.2.4	Operating room	36[4]	12 convenient to table placement At least 2 on each wall
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (3)~~ 2.3-3.2.4	Class 3 imaging room	36[4]	12 convenient to table placement At least 2 on each wall
2.1-3.7.3	Pre-procedure patient care station	4	Convenient to gurney, lounge chair, or bed
2.1-3.7.4	Phase I post-anesthesia recovery (PACU) patient care station	8	Convenient to head of gurney or bed
2.1-3.7.5	Phase II recovery patient care station	4	Convenient to gurney, lounge chair, or bed
2.4-2.2	Birthing room	8	4 convenient to head of the mother's bed
2.6-3.1.2	Infusion patient care station	8	2 convenient for patient and visitor
2.8-3.4.2	Emergency facility treatment room	12	4 convenient to head of exam table or gurney
2.8-3.4.4	Trauma/resuscitation room	16	Convenient to head of gurney or bed
2.8-3.4.8.2	Low-acuity patient treatment station	4	Convenient to patient chair
2.8-3.4.9.2	Human decontamination room	4	—

2.8-6.2.2	Emergency facility triage area	6	Convenient to head of gurney or bed (at least 3 receptacles connected to emergency power and so labeled)
2.10-3.2.2	Hemodialysis patient care station	8	4 on each side of a patient bed or lounge chair (2 on each side of the bed connected to emergency power)

[1]Receptacle numbers reflect the total number of receptacles from normal power, emergency power, or any combination thereof. See Section 2.1-8.3.3.1 (Essential electrical system or emergency electrical power) to determine if an essential electrical system or emergency electrical power is required.

[2]Permanently installed single, duplex, or fourplex receptacles or a combination of these shall be permitted. Receptacles in relocatable power taps or mounted on portable equipment shall not be counted as part of the total minimum requirement.

[3]In this table, "convenient" means the cords from the equipment to be used in the room can reach the receptacles without causing a trip hazard.

[4]The number of receptacles for these spaces is intended to agree with the number required in the governing edition of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

Notes

1. Consideration shall be given to providing some receptacles on the essential electrical system or emergency power and some on normal power in operating rooms and post-anesthesia recovery areas in case of transfer switch failure.
2. Each room in the table shall meet the requirements for connection to the essential electrical system in the governing edition of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.
3. Branch circuits serving only special purpose receptacles shall be permitted to be served by other panelboards.

Table 2.1-2: Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems (Outlets/Inlets) in Outpatient Facilities

Section	Location	Oxygen	Vacuum	Medical Air	WAGD[1]	Instrument Air
PATIENT CARE AND DIAGNOSTIC AREAS						
2.1-3.2.3	Procedure room	1[2]	1[2]	—	—	—
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (2)~~ 2.3-3.2.3	Class 2 imaging room	2	2	1[2]	—	—
2.1-3.2.4.2 (1)(a)	Operating room (255-square-foot OR)	1[2]	1[2]	—	—	—
2.1-3.2.4.2 (1)(b)-(c)	Operating rooms	2[1]	3[1]	1[1,2]	—	—
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (3)~~ 2.3-3.2.4	Class 3 imaging room	2[1]	3[1]	1[1, 2]	—	—
2.1-3.2.5.4	Hyperbaric pre-procedure patient care area	2[2]	2[2]	—	—	—[3]
2.1-3.3.2	Airborne infection isolation room	—[2]	—[2]	—	—	—
~~2.1-3.5.5.2~~ 2.3-3.6.5.2	Magnetic resonance imaging scanner room	—[1, 2]	—[1, 2]	—	—	—
2.1-3.7.4	Phase I post-anesthesia recovery (PACU) patient care station	1	1	—	—	—
2.1-3.7.5	Phase II recovery patient care station	—[2]	—[2]	—	—	—
—	Cast room	—[2]	—[2]	—	—	—
2.4-2.2	Birthing room	1[2]	1[2]	—	—	—
2.8-3.4.2	Emergency facility treatment room	1	1	—	—	—
2.8-3.4.4	Trauma/resuscitation room—per gurney	2	2	1	—	—
2.8-3.4.8.2	Low-acuity patient treatment station	—[2]	—[2]	—	—	—
2.8-3.4.9.2	Human decontamination room	1[2]	1[2,4]	—	—	—
2.8-6.2.2	Emergency facility triage area—per station	1	1	—	—	—
2.9-3.2.2	Endoscopy procedure room	1	3	—	—	—
~~2.11-3.2.9.2 (2)~~ 2.11-3.10.2.2 (2)	Electroconvulsive therapy treatment room	1[2]	1[2]	—	—	—
2.14-3.3	Dental operatory room	—	—	—	—	—
PATIENT SUPPORT FACILITIES						
2.1-4.3.2.2 (2)	Sterile processing decontamination room	—	—	—	—	1[2, 5, 6]
2.1-4.3.2.2 (3)	Sterile processing clean workroom	—	—	—	—	—[2, 5, 6]

2.1-4.3.2.3	One-room sterile processing room	—	—	—	—	—[2, 5, 6]
2.9-4.3.2	Endoscope processing room—decontamination area	—	—[3]	—	—	—[2, 3, 6]
2.9-4.3.3	Endoscope processing room—clean work area	—	—[3]	—	—	—[2, 3, 6]

[1]Where inhalation anesthesia, including nitrous oxide, will be used, a waste anesthetic gas disposal (WAGD) system shall be provided. Use of portable delivery and scavenging equipment shall be permitted in lieu of a permanently installed WAGD system.

[2]Use of portable equipment in lieu of a piped gas system shall be permitted.

[3]Vacuum and/or instrument air shall be provided if needed for cleaning methods used.

[4]Portable vacuum equipment shall be readily accessible.

[5]In the one-room sterile processing facility and the clean workroom of the two-room sterile processing facility, an instrument air outlet or portable compressed air shall be provided as required by the equipment used. In the decontamination room of the two-room sterile processing facility, an instrument air outlet or portable compressed air is required.

[6]NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* permits the use of portable medical compressed air for single applications. Where cylinders are used for non-respiratory purposes, such as air for blowing down scopes and/or running decontamination equipment, NFPA 99 should be consulted for cylinder air quality, placement, and handling.

Note

The provision of medical gases shall also comply with NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*. The clinical risk assessment in NFPA 99 may result in more stringent requirements for locations where this table permits use of portable gases.

Table 2.1-3: Locations for Nurse Call Functions~~Devices~~ in Outpatient Facilities[1, 2]

Section	Location	Patient ~~Station~~	Staff Assistance ~~Station~~	Emergency Call ~~Station~~	Toilet Room Call ~~Station~~	Notes
2.1-3.2.3 ~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (2)~~ 2.3-3.2.3	Procedure room (including endoscopy) Class 2 imaging room		□	□		2, 3
2.1-3.2.4	Operating room		□	□		2
~~2.1-3.5.2.1 (3)~~ 2.3-3.2.4	Class 3 imaging room		□	□		2
2.1-3.7.3	Pre-procedure patient care station	□	□	□		1, 2
2.1-3.7.4	Phase I post-anesthesia recovery (PACU) patient care station	□	□	□		2, 3
2.1-3.7.5	Phase II recovery patient care station	□	□	□		1, 2
2.8-3.4.2	Emergency facility treatment room	□	□			1, 2, 3
2.8-3.4.8.2	Low-acuity patient treatment station	□				
2.8-3.4.9.2	Human decontamination room			□		
2.8-6.2.2	Emergency facility triage area	□	□			1, 2, 3
2.10-3.2.2	Hemodialysis patient care station	□		□		1
2.10-3.3	Dialysis facility home training room	□		□		1
2.10-3.10.2	Dialysis facility patient toilet room				□	1
~~2.11-3.2.9.2 (2)~~ 2.11-3.10.2.2 (2)	Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) room		□	□		2
~~2.11-3.2.9.2 (3)~~ 2.11-3.10.2.2 (3)	ECT recovery patient care station		□	□		2
2.11-3.2.2	Behavioral health exam room		□	□		2, 3
2.12-3.2	Behavioral health crisis center exam room		□	□		2, 3
2.12-3.9	Group room for community-based crisis center		□	□		2, 3
2.12-4.1	Behavioral health crisis center nurse station		□	□		2, 3

[1]It is recognized that staff other than nurses may respond to these devices, but the term “nurse call” is used here as it is an industry-accepted term.

[2]For patient toilet rooms not listed in this table, a safety risk assessment shall be performed to determine if a call function is needed.

Notes

1. One device shall be permitted to accommodate patient function, staff assistance function, and emergency call function.
2. A visible signal shall be activated in the corridor at the door to the room from which the signal was initiated and at the nurse/control station, where one is provided.
3. One device shall be permitted to accommodate both staff assistance and emergency call functions.
4. All operating rooms and Phase I post-anesthesia recovery rooms shall be equipped with an emergency communication system that incorporates push activation of an emergency call switch.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The classification table for exam/treatment, procedure and operating rooms (and Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 imaging rooms) received extensive reorganization and reformatting. As the table is reflective of requirements listed elsewhere in the document, only text that points to *new* language or requirements is shown in blue below. All other text is indicative of existing requirements that are unchanged for the 2026 draft.

Table 2.1-4: Exam/Treatment, Procedure, and Operating Room Classification [1, 2, 3]

Room	**Single patient exam or treatment Room** [4,5,6]	**Single patient exam or treatment room** with dual entry	**Single patient exam or treatment** room for specialty clinical services	**Procedure room**	**Procedure room** where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart	**Operating room**[7]	**Operating room** where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart	**Operating room** where surgery that may require additional staff and equipment will be performed
***FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* section**	2.1-3.2.2.2 (2)(a)	2.1-3.2.2.2 (2)(b)	2.1-3.2.2.2 (2)(c)	2.1-3.2.3	2.1-3.2.3.2(1)(b) 2.1-3.2.3.2(2)(b)	2.1-3.2.4	2.1-3.2.4 (1)(b)	2.1-3.2.4 (1)(c)
Access	From an unrestricted area	From an unrestricted area	From an unrestricted area	From an unrestricted or semi-restricted area	From an unrestricted or semi-restricted area	From a semi-restricted area	From a semi-restricted area	From a semi-restricted area
Room type	Unrestricted	Unrestricted	Unrestricted	Semi-restricted	Semi-restricted	Restricted	Restricted	Restricted
Minimum clear floor area	80 square feet (7.43 square meters)[8]	100 square feet (9.29 square meters)	100 square feet (9.29 square meters) minimum	130 square feet (12.08 square meters)	160 square feet (14.86 square meters)	255 square feet (23.69 square meters)	270 square feet (25.08 square meters)	400 square feet (37.16 square meters)
Minimum clear dimension	2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) at each side and foot of the exam table or recliner	2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) at each side and foot of the exam table or recliner	3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) at the sides(s), head, or foot of exam table or chair that corresponds with care provider(s)' expected work position(s) 1 foot (30.48 centimeters) at all sides (side, head, or foot) of the exam table or chair other than	3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) on each side 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at the head and foot	3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) on each side 6 feet (1.83 meters) at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).	6 feet (1.83 meters) on each side 5 feet (1.52 meters) at the head and foot	6 feet (1.83 meters) on each side 6 feet (1.83 meters) at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters). 5 feet (1.52 meters) at the foot	8 feet 6 inches (2.59 meters) on each side 6 feet (1.83 meters) at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters). 7 feet (2.13 meters) at the foot

			the work position(s)					
Fixed encroachments	No requirement	No requirement	No requirement	Permitted[9]	Permitted[9]	Permitted[9]	Permitted[9]	Permitted[9]
Flooring: cleanable and wear-resistant for the location; stable, firm, and slip-resistant	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Floor and wall base assemblies: monolithic floor with integral coved wall base carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches (15.24 centimeters)				●	●	●	●	●
Wall finishes: *cleanable*	●	●	●					
Wall finishes: *cleanable*, free of fissures, open joints, or crevices				●	●	●	●	●
Ceiling: cleanable with routine housekeeping equipment; lay-in ceiling permitted	●	●	●					
Ceiling: smooth and without crevices, able to be cleaned and disinfected, non-absorptive, non-perforated; lay-in ceiling permitted if gasketed or each ceiling tile weighs at least one pound per square foot and no perforated, titular, serrated, or highly textured tiles				●	●			
Ceiling: monolithic, able to be cleaned and disinfected, gasketed access openings						● [8]	● [8]	● [8]

[1]This table is not an exhaustive list of all requirements for each room type listed; however, it is intended as a tool to assist with determining room type need during the planning and design process. Identifying the types of patient care to be provided as well as the spaces needed to support that care is the responsibility of the owner and associated clinical staff. Health care organizations are required to develop a functional program and perform a safety risk assessment (SRA) during the planning and design phases of every project. See Section 2.1-3.2.1 (Clinical Service Rooms and Facilities—General) and Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program).

[2]Other design requirements that apply to these room types include, but are not limited to, ventilation, lighting, medical gas and vacuum systems, and sound transmission requirements. See (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: Ventilation of Health Care Facilities) for ventilation requirements for these rooms. See Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (Lighting for specific locations in outpatient facilities) and facility chapters for lighting requirements, Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for medical gas and vacuum systems requirements, and Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) for noise transmission requirements.

[3]The surface requirements listed (i.e., flooring, wall finishes, and ceiling requirements) are located in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

[4]Single-patient treatment rooms located in a freestanding emergency care facility shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters). See Section 3.8-3.4.2 (Specific Requirements for Freestanding Emergency Care Facilities: Single-Patient Treatment Room) for additional space requirements.

[5]Multiple-patient treatment rooms located in a freestanding emergency care facility shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient care station. See Section 3.8-3.4.3 (Specific Requirements for Freestanding Emergency Care Facilities: Multiple-Patient Treatment Room) for additional space requirements.

[6]For space requirements for an exam room designated for care of individuals of size, see Section 2.1-2.7.1 (Single-Patient Exam/Observation Room for Care of Individuals of Size—Space Requirements).

[7]For hybrid operating room requirements, see Section 2.3-3.2.4 (Class 3 Imaging Room).

[8]As long as the required clearances can be met with the exam table or recliner that will be used. See Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (2)(a)(i).

[9]Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for an operating room as long as:

(a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) into the minimum clear floor area outside the sterile field.

(b) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

See Section 2.1-3.2.4.2 (3).

[10]See Section 2.1-7.2.3.3 (3)(b) [Ceilings: Restricted areas—Use of a modular or prefabricated laminar (or controlled) flow ceiling system…] for exceptions to monolithic ceilings in operating rooms.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The classification table for Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 imaging rooms (and table for exam/treatment, procedure and operating rooms) received extensive reorganization and reformatting. As the table is reflective of requirements listed elsewhere in the document, only text that points to *new* language or requirements is shown in blue below. All other text is indicative of existing requirements that are unchanged for the 2026 draft.

Table 2.1-5: Classification of Room Types for Imaging Services[1, 2, 3]

Room	**Class 1 imaging room**	**Class 1 imaging room** where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart[4]	**Class 2 imaging room**	**Class 2 imaging room** where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart	**Class 3 imaging room**[5]	**Class 3 imaging room** where anesthetics will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply cart
***FGI Facility Codes for Outpatient Settings* section**	2.3-3.2.2	2.3-3.2.2 2.3-3.2.2 (1)	2.3-3.2.3	2.3-3.2.3 2.3-3.2.3 (3)	2.3-3.2.4	2.3-3.2.4 2.3-3.2.4 (3)
Access	From an unrestricted area	From an unrestricted area	From an unrestricted or semi-restricted area	From an unrestricted or semi-restricted area	From a semi-restricted area	From a semi-restricted area
Room type	Unrestricted	Unrestricted	Semi-restricted	Semi-restricted	Restricted	Restricted
Minimum clear floor area	No requirement	No requirement	No requirement	No requirement	600 square feet (55.74 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 20 feet (6.10 meters).[6]	600 square feet (55.74 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 20 feet (6.10 meters).[6]
Minimum clear dimension	3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[7] 4 feet (1.22 meters) on at least one designated patient transfer side of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[8]	4 feet (1.22 meters) on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[7] 5 feet (1.52 meters) on at least one designated patient transfer side of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[8] 6 feet (1.83 meters)	4 feet (1.22 meters) on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[7] 5 feet (1.52 meters) on at least one designated patient transfer side of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[8]	4 feet (1.22 meters) on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[7] 5 feet (1.52 meters) on at least one designated patient transfer side of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly[8] 6 feet (1.83 meters)		6 feet (1.83 meters)

		at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).		at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).		at the head to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).
Fixed encroachments	No requirement	No requirement	No requirement	No requirement	Permitted[9]	Permitted[9]
Flooring: cleanable and wear-resistant for the location; stable, firm, and slip-resistant	●	●	●	●	●	●
Floor and wall base assemblies: monolithic floor with integral coved wall base carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches (15.24 centimeters)			●	●	●	●
Wall finishes: *cleanable*	●	●				
Wall finishes: *cleanable*, free of fissures, open joints, or crevices			●	●	●	●
Ceiling: cleanable with routine housekeeping equipment; lay-in ceiling permitted	●	●				
Ceiling: smooth and without crevices, able to be cleaned and disinfected, non-absorptive, non-perforated; lay-in ceiling permitted if gasketed or each ceiling tile weighs at least one pound per square foot and no perforated, titular, serrated, or highly textured tiles			●	●		
Ceiling: monolithic, able to be cleaned and disinfected, gasketed access openings					● 10	● 10

[1]This table is not an exhaustive list of all requirements for each room type listed; however, it is intended as a tool to assist with determining room type need during the planning and design process. Identifying the types of patient care to be provided and the spaces needed to support that care is the responsibility of the owner and associated clinical staff. Health care organizations are required to develop a functional program and perform a safety risk assessment during the planning and design phases of every project. See Section 2.3-3.2.1.3 (Clinical service room determination) and Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program). See Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging, for additional requirements.

[2]Other design requirements that apply to these room types include, but are not limited to, ventilation, lighting, medical gas and vacuum systems, and sound transmission requirements. See (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: Ventilation of Health Care Facilities) for ventilation requirements for these rooms. See Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (Lighting for specific locations in outpatient facilities) and facility chapters for lighting requirements; Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for medical gas and vacuum systems requirements; and Section 1.2-6.1 (Acoustic Design) for noise transmission requirements; and Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging, for additional requirements.

[3]The surface requirements listed in this table illustrate the increased level of environmental controls as the rooms progress from Class 1 to Class 3 as found in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces). In addition to surface requirements, the requirements regarding air exchanges and minimum filter efficiencies become more stringent as the class increases. See Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ASHRAE/ASHE 170 for Class 3 imaging room ventilation requirements.

[4]Use of an anesthesia machine shall be permitted in Class 1 imaging rooms in which the following criteria are met:

- Anesthesia is provided exclusively for the benefit of the patient (e.g., to assuage anxiety or claustrophobia) or to combat patient motion that may interfere with exam results.
- The imaging room meets the Class 2 clearance requirements in Section ~~2.1-3.5.2.2~~2.3-3.2.3.2 (Class 2 Imaging Rooms—Space requirements).
- The imaging room meets the Class 2 electrical receptacle requirements of Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).
- The imaging room meets the Class 2 medical gas and vacuum system requirements of Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

[5]Class 3 imaging room are synonymous with “hybrid operating rooms” for the purpose of this document.

[6] Based on the safety risk assessment, the AHJ shall be permitted to grant an alternate method of compliance for Class 3 imaging room clear floor area requirements.

[7]Omission of this clearance shall be permitted on the side(s) of an imaging device that is mounted to/placed against a wall (e.g., a bone densitometry table) or in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

[8]Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

[9]Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for an operating room as long as:

(a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) into the minimum clear floor area outside the sterile field.
(b) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

See Section 2.1-3.2.4.2 (3) for fixed encroachments requirements.

[10]See Section 2.1-7.2.3.3 (3)(b) [Ceilings: Restricted areas—Use of a modular or prefabricated laminar (or controlled) flow ceiling system…] for exceptions to monolithic ceilings in Class 3 imaging rooms.

2.2 Specific Requirements for General and Specialty Medical ~~Services~~ Facilities and/or Clinics

2.2-1 General

2.2-1.1 Application

2.2-1.1.1 The spaces needed and design requirements for each general or specialty medical services facility shall be determined by a risk assessment of the clinical services provided and the acuity level of the patients served.

2.2-1.1.2 General or specialty medical services facilities shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings.*

2.2-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to general or specialty medical services facilities when cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.2-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.2-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

Where the patient care and diagnostic areas and their support areas in Section 2.1-3 (Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas) are provided in a general or specialty medical facility and/or clinic ~~services facility~~, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3 and the amendments in this section.

2.2-3.1 Reserved

2.2-3.2 Clinical Service Rooms

2.2-3.2.1 Exam Room

2.2-3.2.1.1 Number. At least one exam room shall be provided.

2.2-3.2.1.2 Function. Exam rooms shall be permitted to serve as both examination and treatment spaces~~; see~~ in accordance with Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms).

2.2-3.3 – 2.2-3.4 Reserved

2.2-3.5 Imaging Facilities

Where imaging services are provided in a general or specialty medical facility and/or clinic ~~services facility~~, the imaging facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~Section (Imaging Services)~~Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities, for the imaging services provided.

2.2-3.6 – 2.2-3.7 Reserved

2.2-3.8 Support Areas for General and Specialty Medical Facilities and/or Clinics ~~Services Facilities~~

2.2-3.8.1 – 2.2-3.8.10 Reserved

2.2-3.8.11 Clean Workroom/Clean Work Area or Clean Supply Room/Clean Supply Area

A clean workroom or a clean supply room shall be provided. Provision of a clean work area or a clean supply area shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.2-3.8.11.1 Where this space is provided for preparing patient care items, the clean workroom or clean work area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11.2 (Clean workroom).

2.2-3.8.11.2 A clean workroom shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services in the same building.

2.2-3.8.11.3 Where this space is provided only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean supplies, the clean supply room or clean supply area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11.3 (Clean supply room).

2.2-3.8.12 Soiled Holding Room

A soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.3 (Soiled holding room) shall be provided.

2.2-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

Storage for equipment and supplies shall be provided.

2.2-3.9 Reserved

2.2-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.2-3.10.1 Reserved

2.2-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.2-3.10.2.1 A patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) shall be readily accessible from exam rooms.

2.2-3.10.2.2 This patient toilet room shall be permitted to serve waiting areas.

2.2-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.2-4.1 Laboratory Services

Facilities to support laboratory procedures performed on-site shall be provided as described in Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) with the amendments in this section.

2.2-4.1.1 – 2.2-4.1.7 Reserved

2.2-4.1.8 Support Areas for Laboratory Services

2.2-4.1.8.1 Specimen collection. Where specimen collection is conducted on-site, the facility shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1.8.2 (Specimen collection facilities).

(1) Use of the toilet room in Section 2.2-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) for specimen collection shall be permitted if the toilet room is accessible without reentering the waiting room or leaving the clinical services area.

(2) Use of an exam room in Section 2.2-3.2.1 (Exam Room) shall be permitted for blood collection.

2.2-4.1.8.2 Specimen storage

(1) Where specimen collection is conducted on-site, accommodations for storage of blood, urine, and other specimens shall be provided.

(2) Blood storage facilities shall meet the requirements of the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) standards for blood banks.

2.2-4.2 Pharmacy Services

2.2-4.2.1 Where a pharmacy is included in the project, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Pharmacy Services) shall be met ~~for requirements~~.

2.2-4.2.2 Where pharmacy services are not provided but medications are prepared on-site, a medication preparation room or area meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) shall be provided.

2.2-4.3 Sterile Processing

2.2-4.3.1 Reserved

2.2-4.3.2 Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing

Where sterile processing is performed on-site, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.2-4.3.3 Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Sterile Processing

Where sterile processing is performed off-site, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.3.3 (Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Sterile Processing) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.2-4.4 Linen Services

Where linens are used, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.2-5 Building Support Facilities

2.2-5.1 Materials Management

For facilities that receive shared or purchased materials, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.2-5.2 Waste Management

Waste management facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) and the amendments in this section.

2.2-5.2.1 Location of space for a covered hamper holding non-hazardous waste and used, unsoiled linen in an alcove shall be permitted provided the stored waste does not block an egress route.

2.2-5.2.2 Location of storage for hazardous waste (red bag trash) and sharps shall be behind a closed door. Location of this storage in an exam room shall be permitted.

2.2-5.3 Environmental Services

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.2-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

2.2-5.4.1 ~~See~~ Engineering and maintenance services shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services) ~~for requirements~~.

2.2-5.4.2 Storage room(s) for building maintenance supplies and equipment shall be permitted to be shared.

2.2-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.2-6.1 Reserved

2.2-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.2-6.3 Administrative Areas

Each general or specialty medical facility and/or clinic ~~services facility~~ shall have provisions to support administrative activities, filing, and clerical work~~. See Section~~ in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas) ~~for requirements~~.

2.2-6.4 Support Areas for Staff

2.2-6.4.1 Staff Lounge

Where a staff lounge is provided, it shall include a handwashing station.

2.2-6.4.2 Storage for Staff

Storage for staff personal effects (locking drawers, cabinets, or lockers) shall be readily accessible to individual work areas.

2.2-7 Design and Construction Requirements

Design and construction shall comply with the requirements in ~~a See~~ Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements) ~~for requirements~~.

2.2-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) in addition to the requirements in this section.

2.2-8.1 Reserved

2.2-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

~~**2.2-8.2.1** See Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) for requirements.~~

2.2-8.2.1~~2~~ Special Ventilation and Exhaust Systems

2.2-8.2.1~~2~~.1 Rooms where processes that create hazardous particulates (e.g., cast removal, cauterization, medical procedures that produce plumes) are conducted shall meet the requirements for "laboratory work area—general" as well as those for their designated use in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*.

2.2-8.2.1~~2~~.2 Exhaust systems shall be designed to meet all applicable codes and industry guidelines and standards, including but not limited to Occupational Safety and Health Administration and ACGIH (American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists) requirements for exhaust ventilation.

2.2-8.3 – 2.2-8.5 Reserved

~~**2.2-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~**2.2-8.3.1 General**~~

~~Electrical systems in all general and specialty medical services facilities shall meet the following requirements:~~

~~**2.2-8.3.1.1** Electrical system requirements in NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* according to the NFPA risk category (1–4) that applies to the facility type~~

~~**2.2-8.3.1.2** Requirements in NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code*~~

~~**2.2-8.3.2 – 2.2-8.3.3 Reserved**~~

~~**2.2-8.3.4 Emergency Egress Lighting**~~

~~Automatic emergency lighting shall be provided in every facility that has a total floor area of more than 1,000 square feet (92.9 square meters) and in every facility requiring a stairway exit.~~

~~**2.2-8.3.5 Reserved**~~

~~**2.2-8.3.6 Electrical Receptacles**~~

~~**2.2-8.3.6.1** Duplex receptacles shall be available for all equipment to be used in the space.~~

~~**2.2-8.3.6.2** Each exam and worktable area shall be served by at least one duplex receptacle.~~

~~**2.2-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~Plumbing and other piping systems shall meet the requirements in this section.~~

~~**2.2-8.4.1 General**~~

~~Systems shall comply with applicable codes and be designed to supply water at the pressure required to operate all fixtures and equipment during maximum demand.~~

~~**2.2-8.4.2 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems**~~

~~**2.2-8.4.2.1** Backflow preventers (vacuum breakers) shall be installed on water supply outlets to which hoses or tubing can be attached where required by local codes or medical equipment manufacturers.~~

~~**2.2-8.4.2.2** Water temperature at handwashing stations shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.2.5 (4) (Water temperature).~~

~~**2.2-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~For nurse call system requirements, see Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).~~

2.2-8.6 Safety and Security Systems

~~**2.2-8.6.1 Fire Alarm System**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System) for requirements.~~

~~**2.2-8.6.2 Security Systems**~~

A security risk assessment shall be completed in accordance with Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) to determine the need for active and passive security systems in general and specialty medical facilities and/or clinics ~~services facility~~. ~~See Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for more information.~~

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The imaging section (2.1-3.5) in the common elements chapter has been reorganized and relocated here to Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities. All existing 2.1-3.5 requirements can be found below (section numbers have changes) in addition to any revised language available for public comment. All related cross-references in the document to imaging sections will be handled editorially before publication.

2.3-Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities

2.3-1 General

2.3-1.1 Application

2.3-1.1.1 This chapter of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall apply to facilities where outpatient imaging services are provided ~~the outpatient imaging facility that is separate from an acute care hospital~~.

2.3-1.1.2 The outpatient imaging facility shall meet the requirements in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.3-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to outpatient imaging facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.3-1.1.4 The requirements in this chapter shall not apply to imaging services provided in mobile/transportable medical units except as noted in Chapter 2.13, Specific Requirements for Mobile/Transportable Medical Units.

2.3-1.1.5 The requirements in this chapter shall not apply to imaging services provided using portable ultrasound equipment.

2.3-1.2 Radiation Protection

2.3-1.2.1 For imaging services that require radiation protection, a certified radiation physicist or equally qualified expert representing the owner or appropriate state agency shall specify the type, location, and amount of radiation protection to be installed in accordance with the final approved imaging services layout and equipment selections.

2.3-1.2.2 Radiation protection requirements shall be incorporated into the specifications and the building plans.

2.3-1.2.3 ~~See Section~~ For imaging services that require radiation protection, the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be met. ~~for additional requirements.~~

2.3-2 Accommodations for Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.3-3.1 Reserved

2.3-3.2 Imaging Rooms

2.3-3.2.1 General

2.3-3.2.1.1 Application

(1) The requirements in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) shall apply to imaging rooms for all modalities except where indicated elsewhere in this chapter.

(2) Where two or more individual imaging or therapy modalities are integrated into one imaging device (e.g., PET/CT, SPECT/CT, PET/MRI), the minimum design requirements for that room shall include the design criteria for each individual contributing modality.

2.3-3.2.1.2 Imaging room classification. To differentiate the design and construction requirements needed to achieve the environmental controls and other requirements that support the amount of intervention to be provided, imaging rooms shall be classified as Class 1, Class 2, or Class 3 imaging rooms as described in Table 2.1-5 (Classification of Room Types for Imaging Services).

2.3-3.2.1.3 Clinical service room determination. Types and numbers of clinical service rooms (e.g., Class 1, Class 2, Class 3 imaging room) required for a project and anticipated clinical activity to be performed in each type of room shall be determined by the owner and the clinical team during the functional programming process.

2.3-3.2.1.4 Manufacturer's recommended clearances. In addition to the specific requirements for each imaging modality included in this chapter, imaging rooms shall meet the manufacturer's recommended clearances for installation, service, and maintenance.

2.3-3.2.1.5 ~~Where exams or procedures will be performed that require additional personnel and/or large equipment,~~ Imaging rooms shall be sized to accommodate the personnel and equipment planned to be in the room, including any that will be needed for emergency rescue.

2.3-3.2.2 Class 1 Imaging Rooms

2.3-3.2.2.1 General. The need for Class 1 imaging rooms shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.3-3.1.2.3 (Clinical service room determination).

2.3-3.2.2.2 Space requirements. Class 1 imaging rooms shall be sized and configured to provide the minimum clearances described in this section.

(1) Reserved

(2) Class 1 imaging room clearances

(a) Imaging device clearance

(i) A 3-foot (91.44-centimeter) clearance shall be provided on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the patient imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(ii) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted on the side(s) of an imaging device that is mounted to/placed against a wall (e.g., a bone densitometry table) or in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(b) Patient transfer side clearance

(i) A 4-foot (1.52-meter) clearance shall be provided on at least one designated patient transfer side(s) of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(ii) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

2.3-3.2.2.3 Documentation area. Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the Class 1 imaging room.

2.3-3.2.2.4 Patient privacy. Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.3-3.2.2.5 Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in Class 1 imaging rooms unless specified otherwise for a specific imaging modality.

2.3-3.2.2.6 Reserved

2.3-3.2.2.7 Other design requirements

(1) Doors and door hardware shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings).

(2) Surfaces shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

(3) Building system requirements

(a) HVAC system. See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements for Class 1 imaging rooms.

(b) Electrical receptacles shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements for Class 1 imaging rooms.

2.3-3.2.2.8 Support areas for Class 1 imaging rooms. Support areas for Class 1 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.3-3.8 (Support Areas for Imaging Services) in addition to the requirement in this section.

(1) Reserved

(2) Pre- and post-procedure patient care area for Class 1 imaging rooms. For Class 1 imaging rooms, one patient care station shall be provided for each Class 1 imaging room unless the safety risk assessment determines another ratio is needed.

2.3-3.2.2.9 Support areas for Class 1 imaging staff. ~~See Section~~ Staff support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.9 (Support Areas for Imaging Services Staff) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.2.2.10 Support areas for Class 1 imaging patients. ~~See Section~~ Patient support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10 (Support Areas for Imaging Patients) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.2.3 Class 2 Imaging Rooms

2.3-3.2.3.1 General

(1) The Class 2 imaging room shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area.

(2) The need for Class 2 imaging rooms shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.3-3.1.2.3 (Clinical service room determination).

2.3-3.2.3.2 Space requirements. Class 2 imaging rooms shall be sized and configured to provide the minimum clearances described in this section.

(1) Reserved

(2) Class 2 imaging room clearances

(a) Imaging device clearance

(i) A 4-foot (1.22-meter) clearance shall be provided on all circulating sides of a freestanding imaging device, including the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(ii) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted on the side(s) of an imaging device that is mounted to/placed against a wall or in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(b) Patient transfer side clearance

(i) A 5-foot (1.52-meter) clearance shall be provided on at least one designated patient transfer side(s) of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(ii) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(3) Anesthesia work zone clearance. Where an anesthesia machine and associated supply cart are used in a Class 2 imaging room, the clearance at the head shall be 6 feet (1.83 meters) to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).

2.3-3.2.3.3 Documentation area. Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the Class 2 imaging room.

2.3-3.2.3.4 Patient privacy. Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.3-3.2.3.5 Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. A handwashing station that complies with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) or hand scrub facilities that comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities) shall be provided for Class 2 imaging rooms.

(1) Where a handwashing station is provided, it shall be directly accessible to the Class 2 imaging room.

(2) Where hand scrub facilities are provided, a hand scrub position shall be directly outside the entrance to the Class 2 imaging room.

2.3-3.2.3.6 Reserved

2.3-3.2.3.7 Other design requirements

(1) Doors and door hardware shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings).

(2) Surfaces shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

(3) Building system requirements

(a) HVAC system

(i) See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements for Class 2 imaging rooms.

(ii) Anesthetic gas scavenging system. For Class 2 imaging rooms where general anesthesia is provided, see note m in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ASHRAE/ASHE 170.

(b) Electrical receptacles in Class 2 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(c) Plumbing

(i) Drainage systems in Class 2 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.2.6 (Drainage systems).

(ii) Medical gas outlets and vacuum inlets in Class 2 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(d) Nurse call functions for Class 2 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Functions in Outpatient Facilities).

2.3-3.2.3.8 Support areas for Class 2 imaging rooms. Class 2 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.3-3.8 (Support Areas for Imaging Services) in addition to the requirements in this section.

(1) Clean storage. **Facilities with more than one Class 2 imaging room shall have a clean workroom.**

(2) Pre- and post-procedure patient care area for Class 2 imaging rooms. For Class 2 imaging rooms, one patient care station shall be provided for each Class 2 imaging room unless the safety risk assessment determines another ratio is needed.

2.3-3.2.3.9 Support areas for Class 2 imaging staff. ~~See Section~~ Staff support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.9 (Support Areas for Imaging Services Staff) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.2.3.10 Support areas for Class 2 imaging patients. ~~See Section~~ Patient support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10 (Support Areas for Imaging Patients) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.2.4 Class 3 Imaging Rooms

2.3-3.2.4.1 General

(1) The Class 3 imaging room shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area.

(2) The need for Class 3 imaging rooms shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.3-3.1.2.3 (Clinical service room determination).

2.3-3.2.4.2 Space requirements. Class 3 imaging rooms shall be sized and configured to provide the minimum clearances described in this section.

(1) Class 3 imaging room area

(a) Minimum clear floor area. Class 3 imaging rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 600 square feet (55.74 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 20 feet (6.10 meters).

(b) Alternative method of compliance. Based on the safety risk assessment, the AHJ shall be permitted to grant an alternate method of compliance for the requirements in Section 2.3-3.2.4.2 (1)(a).

(2) Class 3 imaging room clearances

(a) Reserved

(b) Patient transfer side clearance

(i) A 5-foot (1.52-meter) clearance shall be provided on at least one designated patient transfer side(s) of the imaging table/bed/couch, gantry, or assembly.

(ii) Omission of this clearance shall be permitted in locations where small mobile ultrasound equipment or similar imaging devices will be used.

(3) Anesthesia work zone clearance. Where an anesthesia machine and associated supply cart are used in a Class 3 imaging room, the clearance at the head shall be 6 feet (1.83 meters) to provide space for an anesthesia work zone with a clear floor area of 48 square feet (4.46 square meters).

(4) Fixed encroachments into the minimum clear floor area. Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for an operating room as long as:

(a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (30.5 centimeters) into the minimum clear floor area outside the sterile field.

(b) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

2.3-3.2.4.3 Documentation area

(1) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the Class 3 imaging room.

(2) Where a built-in feature is provided for documentation in the Class 3 imaging room, it shall allow for direct observation of the patient when in use.

2.3-3.2.4.4 Visual information display. Each Class 3 imaging room shall have access to at least one visual information display where needed.

2.3-3.2.4.5 Hand scrub facilities for Class 3 imaging rooms. Hand scrub facilities that meet the requirements of Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities) shall be provided directly outside the entrance to Class 3 imaging rooms.

2.3-3.2.4.6 Reserved

2.3-3.2.4.7 Other Class 3 imaging room design requirements

(1) Surfaces shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

(2) Building system requirements

(a) HVAC system

(i) See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for ventilation requirements for Class 3 imaging rooms.

(ii) Anesthetic gas scavenging system. For Class 3 imaging rooms where general anesthesia is provided, see note m in Table 8-1 (Design Parameters—Specialized Outpatient Spaces) in ASHRAE/ASHE 170.

(b) Electrical receptacles in Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(c) Plumbing systems

(i) Drainage systems in Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.2.6 (Drainage systems).

(ii) Medical gas and vacuum requirements in Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(d) Communications systems

(i) All Class 3 imaging rooms shall be equipped with an emergency communication system that incorporates push activation of an emergency call switch.

(ii) Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet nurse call function requirements in Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Functions in Outpatient Facilities).

2.3-3.2.4.8 Support areas for Class 3 imaging rooms. Class 3 imaging rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.3-3.8 (Support Areas for Imaging Services) in addition to the requirements in this section.

(1) Clean storage. Facilities with more than one Class 3 imaging room shall have a clean workroom.

(2) Pre- and post-procedure patient care area. For Class 3 imaging rooms, pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care).

2.3-3.2.4.9 Support areas for Class 3 imaging staff. ~~See Section~~ Staff support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.9 (Support Areas for Imaging Services Staff) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.2.4.10 Support areas for Class 3 imaging patients. ~~See Section~~ Patient support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10 (Support Areas for Imaging Patients) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.3 Shielded Control Room or Alcove

2.3-3.3.1 General

2.3-3.3.1.1 Each imaging room containing non-portable radiation-emitting imaging equipment or imaging equipment requiring shielding from external sources of interference shall include a fixed shielded control room or alcove to minimize radiation exposure of technologists and others.

2.3-3.3.1.2 Movable imaging equipment affixed to rails, tracks, or booms shall not be considered portable.

2.3-3.3.1.3 ~~See~~ Radiation protection requirements in Section 2.3-1.1.6 (Radiation Protection) shall be met. ~~for additional requirements.~~

2.3-3.3.2 Space Requirements

The control room or alcove shall be, at minimum, sized and configured in compliance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance.

2.3-3.3.3 Shared Control Room or Alcove

2.3-3.3.3.1 A control room or alcove shall be permitted to serve more than one imaging room, provided the manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance are accommodated for all rooms served.

2.3-3.3.3.2 Where a control room serves more than one imaging room, means shall be provided to prevent a patient in one imaging room from viewing a patient in another imaging room.

2.3-3.3.4 Shielded View Window

2.3-3.3.4.1 The control room or alcove shall include a shielded view window designed to provide a full view of the exam/procedure table and the patient at all times, including a full view of the patient during imaging activities (e.g., when the table is tilted or the chest X-ray is in use).

2.3-3.3.4.2 If a direct line of sight cannot be accommodated due to functional requirements, use of closed-circuit video monitoring shall be permitted.

2.3-3.3.5 Control Room or Alcove for Class 2 or Class 3 Imaging Room

2.3-3.3.5.1 Where a control room is provided for a Class 2 or Class 3 imaging room, it shall be physically separated from the imaging room with walls and a door(s).

2.3-3.3.5.2 Omission of the control room door shall be permitted where the control room serves only one Class 2 or one Class 3 imaging room provided the control room includes the same architectural details and environmental controls as the imaging room.

2.3-3.3.5.3 Laminar flow diffusers and low returns are not required in the control room for Class 2 or Class 3 imaging rooms.

2.3-3.3.6 Omission of the Control Room or Alcove

Omission of the control room or alcove shall be permitted in electrophysiology labs if approved by a certified radiation physicist and provisions are made for individual staff radiation shielding.

2.3-3.4 System Component Room

Where a system component room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.3-3.4.1 System Component Room Space Requirements

The system component room shall be sized to accommodate any equipment ~~the following~~ as indicated by the imaging equipment manufacturer(s), including the clear floor area.~~:~~

~~(a) Transformers~~

~~(b) Power distribution equipment~~

~~(c) Power conditioning/uninterruptible power supply (UPS) equipment~~

~~(d) Computers~~

~~(e) Associated electronics and electrical gear~~

2.3-3.4.2 System Component Room Location

2.3-3.4.2.1 For Class 1 imaging rooms, the system component room shall be permitted to open into the imaging room.

2.3-3.4.2.2 For Class 2 imaging rooms, the system component room shall be permitted to open into the imaging room provided no procedures meeting the definition of "procedural fluoroscopy" are performed in the imaging room.

2.3-3.4.2.3 For Class 3 imaging rooms, the system component room shall not open into the imaging room or any restricted space.

2.3-3.4.3 Sharing of Space

A system component room shall be permitted to be shared among multiple imaging rooms provided the equipment manufacturer(s) permits such sharing and that manufacturer recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance are accommodated for all rooms served.

2.3-3.5 Computed Tomography (CT) Facilities

2.3-3.5.1 CT Scanner Room

2.3-3.5.1.1 The CT scanner room shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended below.

2.3-3.5.1.2 Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the CT scanner room.

2.3-3.5.2 Control Room or Alcove

A control room or alcove that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be provided.

2.3-3.5.3 System Component Room

Where provided, a system component room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.3-3.4 (System Component Room).

2.3-3.6 Radiography Facilities

2.3-3.6.1 General

2.3-3.6.1.1 All imaging rooms where radiography services are performed in Section 2.3-3.6 (Radiography Facilities) and the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms).

2.3-3.6.1.2 Room design and equipment siting shall accommodate the manufacturer's operational, service, and safety clearances for the imaging equipment used.

2.3-3.6.1.3 Shielded control alcove

(1) ~~See~~ The requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be met in addition to the requirement below. ~~for requirements.~~

(2) For mammography machines with built-in shielding for the operator, omission of a shielded control alcove shall be permitted when approved by the certified radiation physicist or authority having jurisdiction.

2.3-3.6.2 Radiography Room

2.3-3.6.2.1 Radiography rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.3-3.6.1 (Radiography Facilities—General) and 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms).

2.3-3.6.2.2 Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the radiography room.

2.3-3.6.2.3 Patient toilet room. A patient toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.3-3.6.3 Fluoroscopy Room

Fluoroscopy rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

2.3-3.6.3.1 Sharing of space. Location of Class 2 and Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms used for different clinical applications in the same area or suite of rooms shall be permitted. These rooms shall be permitted to share common support areas.

2.3-3.6.3.2 Handwashing station or hand scrub facilities. Handwashing stations and hand scrub facilities shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) or Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities).

(1) Class 1 fluoroscopy rooms. A handwashing station shall be provided in Class 1 fluoroscopy rooms unless specified otherwise for a specific imaging modality.

(2) Class 2 fluoroscopy rooms. A handwashing station or hand scrub facilities shall be provided for Class 2 fluoroscopy rooms.

(a) Where a handwashing station is provided, it shall be directly accessible to the Class 2 fluoroscopy room.

(b) Where hand scrub facilities are provided, a hand scrub position shall be directly outside the entrance to the Class 2 fluoroscopy room.

(3) Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms. Hand scrub facilities shall be provided directly outside the entrance to Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms.

2.3-3.6.3.3 Control room or alcove for fluoroscopy

(1) For Class 1 and Class 2 fluoroscopy rooms, a control room or alcove that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be provided.

(2) For Class 3 fluoroscopy rooms, a control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3) (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be provided.

2.3-3.6.3.4 Patient toilet room. A patient toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.3-3.6.4 Mammography Room

Mammography rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

2.3-3.6.4.1 Mammography room clearances. Mammography rooms shall be sized to provide the following minimum clearances:

(1) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on all circulating sides of the patient position

(2) Other clearances in accordance with clinical needs

2.3-3.6.4.2 Visual privacy. Visual privacy of patients shall be provided. Views into the mammography room by the public or other patients shall be prevented when the room is in use.

2.3-3.6.4.3 Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the in the mammography room.

2.3-3.6.4.4 Patient changing room

(1) Where patients do not change in the mammography room, changing room(s) for mammography patients shall be immediately accessible to the waiting area and imaging room(s).

(2) Changing room(s) shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.3-3.10.3 (Patient changing rooms).

(3) Combination of mammography changing room(s) with changing areas for other imaging services shall be permitted.

2.3-3.6.4.5 Patient toilet room. A patient toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.3-3.6.5 Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) Facilities

2.3-3.6.5.1 Configuration of the MRI suite. The requirements in this section shall apply to MRI equipment that is affixed to the building (i.e., they shall not apply to portable MRI equipment).

(1) Suites for MRI equipment with a static magnetic field of 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) that is contained within the MRI scanner device shall conform with the manufacturer's siting guidance.

(2) Suites for MRI equipment with a static magnetic field of 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) that extends beyond the MRI scanner device shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The MRI suite shall conform to the four-zone screening and access control protocols identified in the current edition of the American College of Radiology's "ACR Manual on MR Safety."

(b) MRI suites as well as spaces around, above, and below (as applicable) shall adhere to requirements in International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) Standard 60601-2-33: *Medical electrical equipment* – Part 2-33: *Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of magnetic resonance equipment for medical diagnosis* that were established to prevent unscreened individuals from entering the 9-gauss (0.9-millitesla) volume around the MRI equipment and to minimize electromagnetic or radiofrequency interference to, or from, other equipment.

(c) In addition to the clinical and support areas in this section, the following shall be provided in the MRI suite:

(i) Space for patient interviews and physical and clinical screening separate from the MRI scanner

(ii) Patient treatment/resuscitation arealocation. An area or room in Zone II or Zone III as defined by the "ACR Manual of MR Safety" ~~adjacent to the MRI scanner room~~ shall be provided for patient code treatment/resuscitation.

(iii) Ferromagnetic (only) detection and warning systems

(iv) Access control

(v) Space to accommodate site-specific clinical and operational requirements such as image-guided procedures, emergent imaging, or general anesthesia support

(vi) Space for containment of non-MRI-safe objects outside restricted MRI safety zones

(vii) Space for storage (patient lockers) of patient belongings and non-MRI-safe items

(d) Any area in which the magnetic field strength is equal to or greater than 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) shall be physically restricted by the use of key locks or pass-key locking systems.

2.3-3.6.5.2 MRI scanner room

(1) MRI scanner rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended below.

(2) Handwashing station

(a) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided.

(b) Location of the handwashing station directly outside the entrance to the MRI scanner room shall be permitted.

2.3-3.6.5.3 Superconducting MRI cryogen venting. Where a superconducting MRI system for which the manufacturer requires cryogen venting is installed, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(1) MRI equipment protection. A cryogen vent (quench) pipe shall be provided in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

(a) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall be clearly marked, shielded and/or directed away ~~shielded~~ from staff and maintenance personnel areas and ~~substantially removed from~~ all public and patient routes of travel.

(b) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall have minimum clearances from air intakes, operable windows, or doors as defined by the MRI system manufacturer.

(c) Cryogen venting points of discharge shall be designed with weather head sufficient to protect against the ingress of horizontally driven rain.

(d) Accessible areas around cryogen vent points of discharge shall be marked to indicate the safety exclusion zone in accordance with MRI equipment manufacturer standards.

(2) Building/occupant protection. Emergency exhaust and passive pressure relief shall be provided in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

2.3-3.6.5.4 MRI control room. When the equipment manufacturer recommends an MRI control room for a typical equipment siting, a control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) shall be provided as amended in this section.

(1) The operator's console shall be positioned so the operator has a full view of the principal approach and entrance to the MRI scanner room.

(2) Where there is an outward-swinging door, in the open position the door shall not obstruct the view of the entry opening from the operator's console.

2.3-3.6.5.5 Entry vestibule

(1) The entry vestibule shall be located outside the MRI scanner room so that patients, health care personnel, and other employees must pass through it before entering the MRI scanner room.

(2) The entry vestibule shall be permitted to be either a part of the MRI control room or directly visible from the control room.

(3) Where an MRI's 9-gauss (0.9-milletesla) volume does not extend beyond the MRI device, an entry vestibule shall not be required.

2.3-3.6.5.6 System component room. A system component room that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.4 (System Component Room) shall be provided.

2.3-3.6.5.7 Special design elements for the MRI scanner room

(1) Architectural details

(a) Ferromagnetic materials that may become detached or otherwise interfere with the operation of the MRI scanner shall not be used in MRI scanner rooms.

(b) Radiofrequency (RF) shielding shall be provided for clinical MRI installations to attenuate stray radio frequencies that could interfere with the MRI imaging process.

(c) The MRI scanner room shall be located and/or shielded to avoid electromagnetic interference from elevators or other electromagnetic equipment.

(d) At sites where magnetic field hazards or interferences are not adequately controlled through facility planning (i.e., by physical distance), the need for magnetic shielding shall be assessed by a certified physicist experienced in magnetic shielding design or an equally qualified expert.

(e) Acoustic control shall be provided to mitigate the noise emitted by the MRI scanner. For requirements, see Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

(2) Structural details

(a) The floor structure shall be designed to support the weight of MRI scanner equipment, minimize disturbance to the MRI magnetic field, and mitigate disruptive environmental vibrations.

(b) Structural designs shall keep ferrous content at or below MRI manufacturer requirements, based on mass and proximity to the MRI scanner.

(3) Electrical details

(a) Power conditioning and/or uninterruptible power supplies shall be provided as indicated by the MRI manufacturer’s power requirements and specific facility conditions.

(b) MRI magnet indicator sign

(i) MRI rooms shall be marked with a lighted sign with a red light to indicate the magnet is always on.

(ii) For MRI systems for which the magnetic field is regularly de-energized, signage that is lighted only when the magnet is on shall be permitted.

2.3-3.6.6 Ultrasound Facilities

2.3-3.6.6.1 Ultrasound room. Ultrasound rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(1) Clearances. Ultrasound rooms shall be sized to provide the following minimum clearances:

(a) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on all circulating sides of the patient table or procedural chair

(b) Other clearances in accordance with clinical needs

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the ultrasound room.

2.3-3.6.6.2 Patient toilet room. ~~See~~ A patient toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-3.6.7 Nuclear/Molecular Imaging Services

2.3-3.6.7.1 General

(1) Application. Where nuclear imaging services are offered, space to support those services shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in this section.

(2) Nuclear imaging room. Nuclear imaging rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(3) Exercise area or room. Where patients are required to exercise before imaging is conducted, space shall be provided for the following in the imaging room or in a separate room directly accessible to the imaging room:

(a) Exercise equipment (e.g., stationary bicycle, treadmill). Clearance shall be provided for patient and caregiver access to the equipment on the primary access side and one adjacent side.

(b) Staff workspace

(4) Handwashing stations. Handwashing stations shall be provided throughout the nuclear imaging suite at location(s) of patient contact and at locations where radiopharmaceutical materials are handled, prepared, or disposed. See sections on specific nuclear imaging modalities for additional requirements.

(5) Nuclear imaging dose administration area. A dose administration area shall be provided.

(a) The dose administration area shall be located near the preparation area.

(b) Because several hours may elapse before a dose takes effect, the area shall provide for visual privacy from other areas.

(c) Combination of this area with a pre-procedure patient care area(s) as described in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) shall be permitted provided there is visual privacy between the areas.

(d) For PET services, combination of this area with a patient uptake room as described in Section 2.3-3.6.7.3 (7) (Uptake/cooldown room) shall be permitted.

(6) Patient toilet room. ~~See~~A patient toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2.3 (Toilet room for nuclear imaging patients) ~~for requirements~~.

(7) Surfaces. Surfaces throughout the nuclear imaging suite shall be constructed of ~~cleanable, nonporous~~ materials that can be decontaminated.

2.3-3.6.7.2 Scintigraphy (gamma camera services) facilities

(1) Scintigraphy areas or rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended below.

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the scintigraphy room.

2.3-3.6.7.3 Positron emission tomography (PET) facilities

(1) Where two or more imaging or therapy modalities are integrated into one imaging device (e.g., PET/CT or PET/MRI), see the requirements in Section 2.3-3.2.1.1 (2) (Where two or more...).

(2) PET suite configuration

(a) PET suites shall be designed and positioned in the facility to restrict incidental exposure to ionizing radiation sources by persons not immediately involved in the PET exam.

(b) A certified radiation physicist or other qualified person shall determine if, and to what extent, radiation shielding is required at radiopharmacy, hot lab, scanner, patient holding, and other spaces.

(3) PET scanner room

(a) PET scanner rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(b) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the PET scanner room.

(4) Control room. A control room that meets the requirements in Section 2.3-3.3 (Shielded Control Room or Alcove) and is designed to accommodate the controls for the equipment shall be provided.

(5) System component room. Where a system component room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.3-3.4 (System Component Room).

(6) Cyclotron room. Where radiopharmaceuticals are prepared on-site, a cyclotron shall be provided. A cyclotron shall not be required when radiopharmaceuticals are provided by commercial sources.

(a) Where provided, cyclotron facilities shall be located in access-restricted areas in accordance with applicable state and federal laws.

(b) Shielding requirements for cyclotron facilities shall be coordinated between the equipment manufacturer and a reviewing medical physicist.

(c) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the cyclotron room.

(7) Uptake/cooldown room. A shielded room(s) shall be provided for patient uptake/cooldown.

(a) Uptake rooms shall be provided as appropriate to the exams and radiopharmaceuticals used for the PET service.

(b) Uptake rooms shall be configured and appointed to minimize patient movement during the radiopharmaceutical uptake period.

(c) Toilet room. ~~See~~ A toilet room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.3-3.10.2.5 (Toilet room for positron emission tomography (PET) patients) ~~for requirements~~.

2.3-3.6.7.4 Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) facilities

(1) SPECT rooms shall meet the requirements for the specific imaging room class in Section 2.3-3.2 (Imaging Rooms) as amended in this section.

(2) A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the SPECT room.

2.3-3.7 Reserved

2.3-3.8 Support Areas for Imaging Services Areas

2.3-3.8.1 General

Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the same facility shall be permitted.

2.3-3.8.2 Reception Area with Control Desk

A reception area with control desk shall be provided.

2.3-3.8.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided for staff.

2.3-3.8.4 Consultation Area

2.3-3.8.4.1 An area shall be provided for consultation with patients or the referring clinician.

2.3-3.8.4.2 Where remote consultation with referring clinicians is offered in the facility, ~~see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-3.4 (Accommodations for Telemedicine Services) shall be met. ~~for more information on spaces for remote consultation.~~

2.3-3.8.5–2.3-3.8.7 Reserved

2.3-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone and Storage

Where medications are administered as part of the imaging services provided, the following requirements shall be met:

2.3-3.8.8.1 A medication safety zone as described in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) shall be immediately accessible from pre- and post-procedure patient care areas.

2.3-3.8.8.2 Provision shall be made for locked storage of medications.

2.3-3.8.11 Clean Supply Room/Area

2.3-3.8.11.1 Storage for clean supplies and linens that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area) shall be readily accessible to imaging rooms.

2.3-3.8.11.2 This storage shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services in the same facility.

2.3-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.3-3.8.12.1 A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.3-3.8.12.2 A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be permitted to be shared with another clinical service provided the soiled workroom or soiled holding room is readily accessible to the imaging facility.

2.3-3.8.12.3 Hot soiled holding

(1) Where nuclear imaging services are offered and a medical physicist has determined it is necessary, a contaminated soiled holding area that is separate from other waste holding areas shall be provided in the soiled workroom or soiled holding room.

(2) Radiation, occupational, and environmental protections for contaminated holding area(s) shall be provided as defined by a medical physicist.

(3) A dedicated hot soiled holding area or room shall be permitted to be shared between two adjacent clinical services that produce hot waste.

2.3-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.3-3.8.13.1 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.3-3.8.14 Environmental Services Room

2.3-3.8.14.1 An environmental services room with immediate access to the imaging suite shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.3-3.8.14.2 Sharing of the environmental services room with other clinical services shall be permitted.

2.3-3.8.15 Other Support Areas for Imaging Services

2.3-3.8.15.1 Facilities for processing ultrasound probes. Where cleaning and high-level disinfection of ultrasound probes are performed in a dedicated room or area, one of the following requirements listed below in (1) and (2) shall be met:

(1) Ultrasound probe processing room. Where an ultrasound probe processing room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The processing room shall be permitted to serve multiple rooms where ultrasound exams are performed.

(b) The size of the processing room shall be dictated by the equipment used and the number of probes to be processed.

(c) The processing room shall allow for the flow of ultrasound probes from the decontamination area to a clean area and then to storage.

(d) The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

(i) Work counter

(ii) Instrument-washing sink appropriate to the method of decontamination used

(iii) Handwashing station

(iv) Space and utility connections to support the high-level disinfection process and equipment used

(2) Ultrasound probes processed at point of use or in a separate room or area. Where ultrasound probes are processed at the point of use or in a separate room or area using a self-contained, automated high-level disinfection unit specifically designed for ultrasound probes:

(a) Space for the device with access to an electrical receptacle shall be provided.

(b) Access to a soiled workroom with an instrument-washing sink shall be provided in the same clinical area to support probe decontamination when necessary.

(3) Clean ultrasound probe storage. Storage for clean ultrasound probes shall be provided.

2.3-3.8.15.2 Image management system

(1) Provisions for a digital image management system shall be made in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records).

(2) Location of the image management system off-site shall be permitted.

2.3-3.8.15.3 Image interpretation/reading rooms. Space shall be provided to accommodate equipment for image interpretation or "reading" of medical images.

(1) Remote location of image interpretation/reading areas shall be permitted, provided radiologists are immediately available when interventional imaging procedures are performed.

(2) Where provided on-site, image interpretation/reading areas shall include the following:

(a) Lighting

(i) Adjustable ambient lighting with minimal glare projected onto computer monitors

(ii) A higher level of illumination for room maintenance (that can be activated separate from ambient reading lighting)

(iii) Workstation task lighting for writing or reading hard copy

(b) Acoustic control. Where multiple radiologists interpret images in a contiguous space, materials, finishes, and sound masking that together provide acoustic control to minimize disruption from conversational speaking, dictation, and surrounding noise shall be specified.

2.3-3.8.15.4 Radiopharmaceutical production pharmacy. Where radiopharmaceutical preparation is performed on-site, an area to house a radiopharmacy shall be provided with appropriate shielding.

(1) Space requirements

(a) Space shall be provided for dose calibration, quality assurance, and record-keeping activities.

(b) Space shall be provided for storage of radionuclides, chemicals for preparation, dose calibrators, and records.

(2) Surfaces. Floors and walls shall be constructed of easily decontaminated materials.

(3) HVAC system. Hoods for pharmaceutical preparation shall meet applicable standards.

2.3-3.8.15.5 Contrast media preparation area

(1) Contrast media prepared in the imaging facility. Where contrast media are prepared in the imaging department, this area shall include:

(a) Sink

(b) Counter

(c) Storage to accommodate preparation of contrast media

(d) Secure, lockable storage

(2) Contrast media not prepared in the imaging facility. Where contrast media will not be prepared in the imaging facility, omission of the sink and counter shall be permitted.

(3) One contrast media preparation area shall be permitted to serve multiple imaging rooms.

(4) The contrast media preparation area shall be permitted to be part of a medication preparation area~~. See~~ in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for information~~.

2.3-3.8.15.6 Hot lab for nuclear/molecular imaging services. Where scintigraphy, PET, and SPECT services are provided, a securable area or room(s) shall be provided in which radiopharmaceuticals can be safely stored and doses can be calculated and prepared.

(1) Location. A single hot lab shall be permitted to serve multiple nuclear imaging scanners.

(2) Radiation protection. The hot lab shall be shielded with radiation protection in accordance with Section 2.3-3.5 (Radiation protection).

(3) The hot lab shall include the following:

(a) Source storage area

(b) Dose storage area

(c) Storage area for syringe shields

(d) Emergency eyewash and/or shower

2.3-3.9 Support Areas for Imaging Services Staff

The following spaces shall be provided:

2.3-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.3-3.9.1.1 A staff lounge shall be readily accessible to the imaging facilities.

2.3-3.9.1.2 The staff lounge shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services.

2.3-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

2.3-3.9.2.1 A staff toilet room(s) shall be adjacent to the staff lounge.

2.3-3.9.2.2 In suites of three or more imaging rooms, staff toilets shall be immediately accessible to the imaging suite.

2.3-3.9.3 Storage for Staff

2.3-3.9.3.1 Provisions shall be made for securing staff belongings.

2.3-3.9.3.2 Location of these provisions outside the staff lounge shall be permitted.

2.3-3.9.4 Staff Changing Area

2.3-3.9.4.1 For Class 2 and Class 3 imaging rooms, a staff changing area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area) shall be provided.

2.3-3.9.4.2 The staff changing area shall be permitted to be shared with surgery services.

2.3-3.10 Support Areas for Imaging Patients

2.3-3.10.1 Reserved

2.3-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.3-3.10.2.1 General

(1)A patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) shall be readily accessible from imaging rooms unless otherwise noted.

(2) Where procedures performed require patient access to toilets, a patient toilet room shall be directly accessible from the imaging room.

(3) A patient toilet room shall be permitted to serve more than one imaging room.

(4) Shared toilet rooms shall have interlocking door access hardware.

2.3-3.10.2.2 Toilet room for Class 1 fluoroscopy patients

(1) A separate toilet room with handwashing station shall be directly accessible from each dedicated Class 1 fluoroscopy room or combination radiography/fluoroscopy room.

(2) Patients shall be able to leave the toilet room without reentering the fluoroscopy room.

2.3-3.10.2.3 Toilet room for nuclear imaging patients

(1) Toilet rooms reserved for nuclear imaging patients shall be immediately accessible to waiting rooms or areas and nuclear imaging rooms.

(2) For dosed nuclear imaging patients, dedicated hot toilets, restricted from the use of all others for a duration from last use set by a medical physicist, shall be provided in quantities and locations to meet the needs of nuclear imaging patients.

2.3-3.10.2.4 Toilet room for positron emission tomography (PET) patients. A toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) and a dedicated hot toilet to accommodate radioactive sanitary waste shall be adjacent to the uptake/cooldown room.

2.3-3.10.3 Patient Changing Rooms

Where patient changing rooms are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2..3-3.10.3.1 Patient changing rooms shall be located adjacent to the imaging rooms.

2.3-3.10.3.2 Each changing room shall include a seat or bench and mirror.

2.3-3.10.3.3 Means for individual lockable storage for patient clothing and valuables shall be immediately accessible to changing rooms.

2.3-3.10.3.3 A patient toilet room(s) with handwashing stations that comply with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Stations) shall be immediately accessible to the patient changing rooms.

2.1-3.10.4 Patient Waiting Room or Area

2.1-3.10.4.1 Where provided, a waiting room or area for patients receiving imaging services shall include the following:

(1) Access to immediately accessible toilet facilities

(2) Access to drinking water

(3) Access to public communications services

2.1-3.10.4.2 Sub-waiting area

(1) Provision of sub-waiting areas for individual modalities, or sharing of waiting areas among similar modalities, shall be permitted.

(2) Sub-waiting areas shall be separated from unrelated traffic and under staff control.

2.1-3.10.4.3 Low-level hot patient waiting area

(1) Where imaging services will result in patients with low levels of radiation (low-level hot), a sub-waiting area to isolate these patients shall be provided.

(2) Omission of this area shall be permitted if a medical physicist’s report indicates it is not necessary.

2.3-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.3-4.1 Laboratory Services

Where laboratory services are provided in the outpatient imaging facility, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-4.2 Pharmacy Services

2.3-4.2.1 General

Where pharmacy services are provided in the outpatient imaging facility, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Pharmacy Services) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-4.3 Sterile Processing

Where sterile processing is performed in the outpatient imaging facility, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-4.4 Linen Services

2.3-4.4.1 On-Site Linen Processing

Where linen is processed on-site, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Area) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-4.4.2 Off-Site Linen Processing

Where linen is processed off-site, ~~see Section~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4.3 (Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Laundry Services) shall be met. ~~for requirements.~~

2.3-5 Building Support Facilities

2.3-5.1 Materials Management

~~For m~~Materials management facilities shall meet the requirements in Section ~~requirements, see Section~~ 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management).

2.3-5.2 Waste Management

~~For w~~Waste collection and storage ~~facility requirements, see~~ facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management).

2.3-5.3 Environmental Services Room

2.3-5.3.1 General

An environmental services room with immediate access to the imaging suite shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.3-5.3.2 Sharing of Space

Sharing of the environmental services room with other clinical services shall be permitted.

2.3-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

~~For e~~Engineering and maintenance service facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~requirements, see~~ Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services).

2.3-6 Public and Administrative Areas

The requirements in Section 2.1-6 (Public and Administrative Areas) shall apply to the outpatient imaging facility.

2.3-7 Design and Construction Requirements

The requirements in Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements) shall apply to the outpatient imaging facility in addition to the requirements in this section.

2.3-7.1 Reserved

2.3-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

2.3-7.2.1 Floor Finishes

Floor finishes shall be selected to conform to imaging equipment technical requirements (e.g., electrostatic dissipation), rolling resistance to carts and tables, and service limitations (e.g., no powered floor cleaners in an MRI scanner room).

2.3-7.2.2 Structural Support

The floor and, if applicable, ceiling structures in imaging rooms shall be designed to support the weight of the imaging equipment as well as other fixed ancillary equipment (e.g., lights, service columns) and movable ancillary equipment.

2.3-7.2.3 Protection from Vibration and Other Disturbances

Imaging room(s) shall be protected from environmental vibrations and other disturbances in accordance with the imaging equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

2.3-8 Building Systems

~~The requirements in~~ Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) ~~shall apply to the outpatient imaging facility~~.

2.4 Specific Requirements for Birth Centers

2.4-1 General

2.4-1.1 Application

~~**2.4-1.1.1** This chapter shall apply to any health care facility that is not a hospital or located in a hospital where birth is planned to occur following a low-risk, uncomplicated pregnancy.~~

2.4-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to birth centers where all of the following apply:

2.4-1.1.1.1 The birth center is not a hospital or in a hospital.

2.4-1.1.1.2 The birth center has four or fewer birthing rooms.

2.4-1.1.1.3 Low-risk physiologic births without medical interventions or anesthesia are planned to occur.

2.4-1.1.1.4 The length of stay is expected to accommodate fewer than 12 hours after birth.

2.4-1.1.2 The birth center shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.4-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to birth centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.4-1.2 Functional Program

2.4-1.2.1 Size and Layout

Department sizes and clear floor areas depend on program requirements and organization of services in the facility. As required by community needs, combination or sharing of some functions shall be permitted, provided the layout does not compromise safety standards or medical nursing practices.

2.4-1.2.2 Transfer and Service Affiliations

Transfer and service affiliations with hospitals with obstetrical services shall be part of planning for a birth center.

2.4-1.3 Site

2.4-1.3.1 Location

2.4-1.3.1.1 Mode of transport and travel times to affiliated hospitals shall be considered in facility location and design.

(1) Timeliness of maternal-fetal transport for commencement of cesarean delivery shall be the prime consideration.

(2) Other considerations shall include neonatal and maternal transport to surgical or specialty care.

2.4-1.3.1.2 The location of a birth center shall be accessible from public transportation, if available.

2.4-1.3.2 Parking

2.4-1.3.2.1 In the absence of a formal parking study, one space shall be provided for each birthing room plus one space for each employee normally present on any single weekday shift.

2.4-1.3.2.2 Designated space shall be provided for emergency transfer vehicles.

2.4-2 Birth Center Facilities

2.4-2.1 Exam Room

Where an exam room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms).

2.4-2.2 Birthing Room

2.4-2.2.1 General

2.4-2.2.1.1 Number. The number of birthing rooms shall be as determined by the owner to accommodate the projected number of patients served at one time.

2.4-2.2.1.2 Capacity. The maximum number of beds per room shall be one.

2.4-2.2.1.3 Location

(1) Birthing rooms shall be located to address speech and visual privacy during occupancy for labor, birth, and postpartum care. ~~See Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).~~

(2) Birthing rooms shall be located out of the path of unrelated traffic and under direct supervision of the facility staff.

2.4-2.2.2 Space Requirements

2.4-2.2.2.1 Area. A birthing room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters), including the newborn care area.

2.4-2.2.2.2 Clearance. A birthing room shall have a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters).

2.4-2.2.3 Windows

Each birthing room shall have an outside window.

2.4-2.2.4 Privacy

Windows or doors that would permit observation into the room shall be designed for mother and newborn privacy.

2.4-2.2.5 Handwashing Station

Each birthing room shall be equipped with a handwashing station in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.4-2.2.6 Patient Toilet

Each birthing room shall have direct access to a private bathroom with the following:

2.4-2.2.6.1 Handwashing station

2.4-2.2.6.2 Toilet

2.4-2.2.6.3 Shower or tub

2.4-2.3 – 2.4-2.7 Reserved

2.4-2.8 Support Areas for the Birth Center

2.4-2.8.1 General

2.4-2.8.1.1 Where support areas are required for the services offered in the birth center, identifiable spaces shall be provided for each.

2.4-2.8.1.2 The size and location of each support area shall depend on the numbers and types of modalities served.

2.4-2.8.2 Staff Work Area

Staff work area(s) with counters and space for storage shall be provided.

2.4-2.8.3 – 2.4-2.8.4 Reserved

2.4-2.8.5 Multipurpose Room

For birth centers that provide health education and a library, dedicated education/library facilities shall be provided.

2.4-2.8.6 Reserved

2.4-2.8.7 Handwashing Stations

Handwashing stations shall be immediately accessible or directly accessible to staff work area(s).

2.4-2.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

~~See~~ A medication safety zone shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

2.4-2.8.9 Nourishment Area

Where a nourishment area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room).

2.4-2.8.10 Ice-Making Equipment

Each birth center shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment.

2.4-2.8.10.1 Location of the ice-making equipment shall be permitted in the clean workroom or in the nourishment area.

2.4-2.8.10.2 Ice accessible to the public shall be served from self-dispensing ice-makers.

2.4-2.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Work Area

A clean ~~work area~~ workroom or clean ~~workroom~~ supply room/area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

~~**2.4-2.8.11.1** Clean work areas or workrooms shall be separate from and have no direct connection with soiled workrooms or soiled holding rooms.~~

~~**2.4-2.8.11.2** Where the clean work area or workroom is used for preparing care items for mothers and newborns, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11.2 (Clean workroom).~~

2.4-2.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.4-2.8.12.1 A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.4-2.8.12.2 Where only a soiled holding room is provided, facilities for cleaning bedpans shall be provided in the mothers' bathrooms.

2.4-2.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.4-2.8.13.1 Clean linen storage area. See Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) for storage requirements.

2.4-2.8.13.2 – 2.4-2.8.13.3 Reserved

2.4-2.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage) for requirements.

2.4-2.8.14 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-5.3.1.2 (Environmental services room for facility-based environmental services) shall be provided for the exclusive use of the birth center.

2.4-2.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.4-2.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.4-2.9.1.1 A lounge for staff shall be provided.

2.4-2.9.1.2 Multi-use areas shall be permitted to serve as the staff lounge.

2.4-2.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

A ~~readily accessible~~ toilet room for staff use shall be provided in the birth center.

2.4-2.9.3 Staff Storage Locations

Securable lockers, closets, and/or cabinet compartments shall be provided for staff use.

2.4-3 Reserved

2.4-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.4-4.1 – 2.4-4.3 Reserved

2.4-4.4 Linen Services

See Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) for requirements.

2.4-4.5 Food Services

Where food service is provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.4-4.5.1 Any food service facilities and equipment provided shall conform to the standards of NSF International and other applicable codes.

2.4-4.5.2 Provision shall be made for thorough cleaning and sanitizing of equipment to avoid mixing soiled and clean equipment.

2.4-5 Building Support Facilities

2.4-5.1 Materials Management

See Section 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management) for requirements.

2.4-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) for requirements.

2.4-5.3 Reserved

2.4-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

Space for mechanical and electrical equipment and for maintenance of the equipment shall be provided.

2.4-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.4-6.1 Reserved

2.4-6.2 Public Areas

2.4-6.2.1 Reserved

2.4-6.2.2 Reception Area

A reception area shall be provided and located to control and monitor access to the birth center.

2.4-6.2.3 Waiting Area or Room

A waiting area or room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2.3 (Waiting Area or Room).

2.4-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.4-6.3.1 – 2.4-6.3.2 Reserved

2.4-6.3.3 Office

Office space shall be provided to support the needs of the birth center.

2.4-6.3.4 Reserved

2.4-6.3.5 Medical Records

See Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records) for requirements.

2.4-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.4-7.1 Building Codes

The birth center shall be permitted to fall under the business occupancy provisions of applicable life safety and building codes.

2.4-7.2 Architectural Details and Surfaces

2.4-7.2.1 Architectural Details

2.4-7.2.1.1 Corridors. In the absence of local codes or ordinances, the required minimum corridor width shall be 3 feet 8 inches (1.12 meters).

2.4-7.2.2 Surfaces

2.4-7.2.2.1 Birthing rooms. Surfaces in birthing rooms shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-7.2.3.1 (1) (Flooring surfaces…) and 2.1-7.2.3.2 (1)(a) (Wall finishes shall be…).

2.4-7.2.2.2 Nourishment area. Surfaces in food service areas shall be non-absorbent, smooth, and cleanable.

2.4-8 Building Systems

2.4-8.1 General

2.4-8.1.1 HVAC, electrical, plumbing, communications, fire alarm, elevator, and related building systems shall comply with ~~meet~~ state and local building codes in addition to the following requirements.

2.4-8.1.2 An emergency operations plan that includes provisions for building systems shall be provided.

2.4-8.2 Reserved

2.4-8.3 Electrical Systems

2.4-8.3.1 Lighting

The birthing room shall provide lighting capable of providing at least 70 foot-candles in the delivery and newborn care area(s).

2.4-8.3.2 Electrical Receptacles

See Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

2.4-8.4 Plumbing Systems

~~Birth centers shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) as amended in this section.~~

2.4-8.4.1 Potable water supply systems shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.2.3 (1) (Potable water supply systems—Capacity).

2.4-8.4.2 Heated potable water distribution systems shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.2.5 (Heated potable water distribution systems).

2.4-8.4.3 Plumbing fixtures shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.3 (Plumbing Fixtures).

2.4-8.4.4 Where portable tubs are used, they shall comply with Section 2.1-8.4.3.9 (Hydrotherapy facilities).

2.4-8.4.5~~1~~ Medical Gas Outlets

2.4-8.4.5~~1~~.1 Birthing rooms shall have available oxygen and vacuum per the requirements of Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.4-8.4.5~~1~~.2 Use of portable equipment shall be permitted.

2.4-8.4.5~~1~~.3 Medical gas storage shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

2.4-8.5 Reserved

2.4-8.6 Security Systems

A security risk assessment shall inform decisions about the need for active and passive security systems. See Section 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment).

2.4-8.7 Elevator~~s~~ Systems

~~Where elevators are provided, elevator cars shall have minimum inside dimensions of 5 feet 8 inches (1.73 meters) wide by 7 feet 6 inches (2.29 meters) deep.~~

Where elevators are provided, they shall comply with the requirements of Section 2.1-8.7.4 (Leveling Device) through Section 2.1-8.7.6 (Elevator Installation) as amended in this section.

2.4-8.7.1 Elevators shall be capable of accommodating an emergency transport gurney (i.e., ambulance cot) and a minimum of one standing adult when the elevator door is fully closed.

2.5 Specific Requirements for Urgent Care Centers

2.5-1 General

2.5-1.1 Application

2.5-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities that provide urgent care to the public but are not emergency facilities.

2.5-1.1.2 The urgent care center shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.5-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to urgent care centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.5-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.5-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.5-3.1 General

2.5-3.1.1 At least two patient care stations shall be provided; one of these shall be a single-patient room.

2.5-3.1.2 The patient care stations shall be permitted to be a combination of bays, cubicles, and single-patient rooms.

2.5-3.2 Triage Area

2.5-3.2.1 Location

Spaces used to triage patients shall be permitted to be any of the following:

2.5-3.2.1.1 A dedicated triage space

2.5-3.2.1.2 A patient care station(s)

2.5-3.2.1.3 A space in a consultation room or other patient care area

2.5-3.2.2 Patient Privacy

The triage area shall have provisions for patient privacy as indicated in Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.5-3.2.3 Handwashing Station

The triage area shall be directly accessible to a handwashing station that complies with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.5-3.2.4 The triage area shall include the following:

(1) Access to language translation services

(2) Means to alert other staff or local authorities when assistance is needed

2.5-3.3 Exam and Treatment Rooms

2.5-3.3.1 Single-Patient Exam Room

Single-patient exam rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms).

2.5-3.3.2 Multiple-Patient Exam Room

Where an exam room with multiple-patient care stations is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.5-3.3.2.1 Space requirements

(1) Clearances. These clearances shall be measured from the extended lounge chair/gurney position.

(a) Where bays are used, the following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(i) 4 feet (1.22 meters) between the sides of gurneys/lounge chairs

(ii) 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) between the sides of gurneys/lounge chairs and adjacent walls or partitions

(iii) 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) between the foot of gurneys/lounge chairs and the cubicle curtain

(b) Where cubicles are used, a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) shall be provided between the sides and foot of gurneys/lounge chairs and adjacent walls, partitions, or cubicle curtains.

(2) Where bays or cubicles face each other, an aisle with a minimum clearance of 5 feet (1.52 meters) independent of the foot clearance between patient care stations or other fixed objects shall be provided.

2.5-3.3.2.2 Patient care station features. Each bay or cubicle shall contain the following:

(1) Exam light. See Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (1) (Lighting for exam/treatment/trauma rooms) for requirements.

(2) Accommodations for written or electronic documentation

(3) Space for a visitor's chair

2.5-3.3.2.3 Handwashing station

(1) At least one handwashing station shall be provided in each multiple-patient exam room.

(2) Handwashing stations shall comply with sections 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements) and 2.1-3.8.7.3 (Handwashing Station—Additional requirements for handwashing stations that serve multiple patient care stations).

2.5-3.3.2.4 Supply storage. Storage for supplies shall be provided in the multiple-patient exam room.

2.5-3.3.3 Single-Patient Treatment Room

Where a treatment room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.8-3.4.2 (Freestanding Emergency Facility—Single-Patient Treatment Room).

2.5-3.4 Observation Facilities

2.5-3.4.1 General

2.5-3.4.1.1 Facilities shall be provided for temporary holding of urgent care patients until they can be discharged or transferred to an appropriate hospital.

2.5-3.4.1.2 Use of one or more exam or treatment rooms for this purpose shall be permitted.

2.5-3.4.2 Facility Requirements

Size, type, and equipment shall be as required for anticipated patient load and lengths of stay.

2.5-3.4.3 Functional Requirements

2.5-3.4.3.1 Direct visual observation of each patient shall be provided from the nurse station, except where exam or treatment rooms are used for patient holding. In the latter case, a view from the nurse/control station to the doors of the exam or treatment rooms shall be permitted.

2.5-3.4.3.2 Each observation patient care station shall have the following:

(1) Patient privacy in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy)

(2) A readily accessible patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Rooms)

2.5-3.5 Imaging Services

2.5-3.5.1 General

Where imaging services are offered, facilities that meet the requirements in ~~Section 2.1-3.5 (Imaging Services)~~ Chapter 2.3, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities, shall be provided for the modalities used.

2.5-3.5.2 – 2.5-3.5.9 Reserved

2.5-3.5.10 Support Areas for Patients

Separate changing rooms for imaging services are not required where imaging is used only for emergency procedures.

2.5-3.6 – 2.5-3.7 Reserved

2.5-3.8 Support Areas for Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.5-3.8.1 Reserved

2.5-3.8.2 Nurse Station

2.5-3.8.2.1 A nurse station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) shall be provided to accommodate charting, files, and staff consultation activities.

2.5-3.8.2.2 The nurse station shall be located to permit direct observation of the clinical area and access to it.

2.5-3.8.2.3 Communication links for staff with the exam rooms, treatment rooms, reception control, laboratory, and imaging services shall be provided.

2.5-3.8.2.4 The nurse station shall be permitted to share space with the reception and information area.

2.5-3.8.3 Poison Control Center

Where a poison control center is provided, a telephone shall be provided for staff to call regional and/or national poison centers.

2.5-3.8.4 – 2.5-3.8.7 Reserved

2.5-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

~~See~~ A medication safety zone shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

2.5-3.8.9 Nourishment Area

Where a nourishment area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room).

2.5-3.8.10 Reserved

2.5-3.8.11 Clean Supply Room

Where a clean workroom or clean supply room/area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.5-3.8.12 Soiled Holding Room

A soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

2.5-3.8.13 Equipment Storage

2.5-3.8.13.1 – 2.5-3.8.13.2 Reserved

~~**2.5-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair and gurney storage.** Wheelchair and gurney storage shall be provided in the clinical area.~~

2.5-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair and gurney parking. A designated area shall be provided for parking at least one wheelchair and gurney in a non-public area located out of any required egress width or other required clearance.

2.5-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Emergency equipment storage shall be provided in accordance with 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.5-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.5-4.1 Laboratory Services

Where facilities for laboratory services are provided, see Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) for requirements.

2.5-5 Building Support Facilities

2.5-5.1 Reserved

2.5-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) for requirements.

2.5-5.3 Environmental Services Room

A readily accessible environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.5-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.5-6.1 Reserved

2.5-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas) as amended in this section.

2.5-6.2.1 Vehicular Drop-Off and Pedestrian Entrance

Access to wheelchairs shall be provided at the urgent care entrance.

2.5-6.2.2 Reception

Reception and information areas shall provide for direct observation of the urgent care entrance and access to the lobby and patient care area.

2.5-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas) and the requirements in this section.

2.5-6.3.1 Reserved

2.5-6.3.2 Interview Space

2.5-6.3.2.1 Space shall be provided for private interviews.

2.5-6.3.2.2 For initial interviews, space in the triage area, a patient care station, or a consultation room shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.5-6.3.3 Reserved

2.5-6.3.4 Staff Conference Space

2.5-6.3.4.1 Space shall be provided for staff conferences.

2.5-6.3.4.2 Another functional space in the urgent care center shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.5-6.4 Staff Support Areas

See Section 2.1-6.3.7 (Support Areas for Administrative Staff) for requirements.

2.5-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.5-7.1 Reserved

2.5-7.2 Architectural Details and Surfaces

2.5-7.2.1 Reserved

2.5-7.2.2 Architectural Details

2.5-7.2.2.1 Corridor width. The minimum corridor width provided shall be in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.1 (Corridor width).

2.5-7.2.2.2 Reserved

2.5-7.2.2.3 Doors. Door openings shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings).

2.5-7.2.3 Surfaces

See Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) for requirements.

2.5-8 Building Systems

~~See Section~~ Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) ~~for requirements~~.

2.6 Specific Requirements for Infusion Centers

2.6-1 General

2.6-1.1 This chapter shall apply to outpatient facilities where infusion services are provided.

2.6-1.2 The infusion center shall meet the requirements in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.6-1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to infusion centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.6-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.6-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.6-3.1 Infusion Area

An infusion area that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided.

2.6-3.1.1 General

2.6-3.1.1.1 The infusion area shall be permitted to be an open-plan area.

2.6-3.1.1.2 The infusion area shall be separate from administrative and waiting areas.

2.6-3.1.2 Infusion Patient Care Stations

2.6-3.1.2.1 General. Individual patient care stations shall be permitted to be any combination of bays, cubicles, and single-patient rooms.

2.6-3.1.2.2 Space requirements

(1) Where bays are used, space that allows for the following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(a) 5 feet (1.52 meters) between patient gurneys or lounge chairs

(b) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides of patient gurneys or lounge chairs and any fixed object

(c) 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) at the foot of patient gurneys or lounge chairs in the fully reclined position

(2) Where cubicles are used, space that allows for the following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(a) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides of patient gurneys or lounge chairs and any fixed object

(b) 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) at the foot of patient gurneys or lounge chairs in the fully reclined position

(3) Where single-patient rooms are used, space shall be provided that allows for 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at the sides and foot of patient gurneys or lounge chairs in the fully reclined position.

2.6-3.1.2.3 Patient privacy

(1) Each patient care station shall have provisions for visual privacy.

(2) Portable provisions for visual privacy shall be permitted to meet this requirement in an open-plan infusion area.

2.6-3.1.3 – 2.6-3.1.4 Reserved

2.6-3.1.5 Handwashing Station

A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station), including the requirements for locating handwashing stations that serve multiple patient care stations.

2.6-3.1.6 Patient Toilet Room

2.6-3.1.6.1 At least one patient toilet room with handwashing station shall be immediately accessible to the infusion area.

2.6-3.1.6.2 ~~Additional t~~Toilet rooms shall be provided at the ratio of one patient toilet for every eight patient care stations and for each major fraction thereof.

2.6-3.2 Exam Room

Where an exam room is provided in the infusion center, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (Single-patient exam/observation room).

2.6-3.3 Reserved

2.6-3.4 Special Patient Care Rooms

2.6-3.4.1 Airborne Infection Isolation (AII) Room

2.6-3.4.1.1 The need for and number of required AII rooms shall be determined by an infection control risk assessment (ICRA).

2.6-3.4.1.2 Where required, AII room(s) shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.3.2 (AII Room).

2.6-3.5 Nuclear Imaging

Where nuclear imaging services are provided, see Section ~~2.1-3.5.7~~2.3-3.6.7 (Nuclear/Molecular Imaging Services) for requirements.

2.6-3.6 Radiation Therapy

Where radiation therapy services are provided, see Section 2.1-3.6 (Radiation Therapy) for requirements.

2.6-3.7 Reserved

2.6-3.8 Support Areas for the Infusion Center

2.6-3.8.1 General

Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the same facility shall be permitted.

2.6-3.8.2 Nurse Station

2.6-3.8.2.1 A nurse station(s) that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) shall be located in the infusion area.

2.6-3.8.2.2 The nurse station(s) shall be designed to accommodate ~~provide for~~ monitoring of all patients ~~all patient care stations~~.

2.6-3.8.3 – 2.6-3.8.7 Reserved

2.6-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

~~See~~ A medication safety zones shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

2.6-3.8.9 Nourishment Area

2.6-3.8.9.1 A nourishment area or room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room).

2.6-3.8.9.2 Provisions for drinking water shall be provided.

2.6-3.8.10 Reserved

2.6-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

A clean workroom or clean supply room or area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.6-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.6-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.6-3.8.13.1 Clean linen storage

~~(1) Designated space shall be provided for clean linen storage.~~

~~(2) Clean linen storage shall be permitted to be an alcove with a cart or space between patient care stations.~~

(1) Where blankets or other linens are used, a clean linen storage area shall be provided.

(2) A covered cart or a closet for clean linen storage shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.6-3.8.13.2 Reserved

~~**2.6-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair storage.** Space for storage of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2.6 (Wheelchair Storage and Parking Space).~~

2.6-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.6-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Space for storage of emergency equipment shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.6-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

Staff support areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.9 (Support Areas for Staff) as amended in this section.

2.6-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.6-3.9.1.1 The staff lounge shall be readily accessible to the infusion area.

2.6-3.9.1.2 The staff lounge shall be permitted to serve more than one clinical service area.

2.6-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

A staff toilet room with handwashing station shall be readily accessible to the infusion area.

2.6-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

Where storage for patient belongings is provided for infusion patients, it shall be located in the infusion area.

2.6-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.6-4.1 Laboratory Services

Where laboratory services are provided in the infusion center, see Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) for requirements.

2.6-4.2 Pharmacy Services

Where pharmacy services are provided in the infusion center, see Section 2.1-4.2 (Pharmacy Services) for requirements based on the scope of services provided.

2.6-5 Building Support Facilities

2.6-5.1 Reserved

2.6-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) for requirements.

2.6-5.3 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.6-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.6-6.1 Reserved

2.6-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2 and the requirement in this section.

2.6-6.2.1 – 2.6-6.2.2 Reserved

2.6-6.2.3 Waiting Area or Room

A waiting area or room that meets the requirements of Section 2.1-6.2.3 (Waiting Area or Room) shall be readily accessible to the infusion area.

2.6-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.6-6.3.1 – 2.6-6.3.2 Reserved

2.6-6.3.3 Office Space

See Section 2.1-6.3.3 (General or Individual Office Space) for requirements.

2.6-6.3.4 Reserved

2.6-6.3.5 Medical Records

See Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records) for requirements.

2.6-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.6-7.1 Reserved

2.6-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

2.6-7.2.1 Reserved

2.6-7.2.2 Architectural Details

2.6-7.2.2.1 Corridor width. The minimum corridor width provided shall be in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.1 (Corridor width).

2.6-7.2.3 Surfaces

See Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces) for requirements.

2.6-8 Building Systems

~~See~~ Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) ~~for requirements~~.

2.7 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Surgery Facilities

2.7-1 General

2.7-1.1 Application

2.7-1.1.1 This chapter of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall apply to outpatient facilities where same-day surgery is performed.

2.7-1.1.2 The outpatient surgery facility shall meet the requirements in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings.*

2.7-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to outpatient surgery facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.7-1.2 Functional Program

2.7-1.2.1 – 2.7-1.2.2 Reserved

2.7-1.2.3 Shared Services

If the outpatient surgery facility is part of an acute care hospital or other medical facility, services shall be permitted to be shared to minimize duplication as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.7-1.3 Site

2.7-1.3.1 Reserved

2.7-1.3.2 Parking

Space(s) shall be reserved or designated for pickup of patients after recovery.

2.7-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.7-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.7-3.1 General

2.7-3.1.1 Location and Layout

2.7-3.1.1.1 The semi-restricted and restricted areas of the surgery facility shall be arranged to prevent unrelated traffic through those spaces.

2.7-3.1.1.2 Patient care areas shall be designed to facilitate movement of patients and personnel into, through, and out of defined areas in the surgery facility.

2.7-3.1.1.3 Signs that clearly indicate where surgical attire is required shall be provided at all entrances to semi-restricted areas.

2.7-3.1.1.4 The outpatient surgery facility shall be divided into three designated areas—unrestricted, semi-restricted, and restricted—that are defined by the physical activities performed in each area.

2.7-3.1.2 Diagnostic Services

Facilities for diagnostic services shall be provided on- or off-site for pre-admission tests required for the procedures performed in the facility.

2.7-3.2 Exam Room

2.7-3.2.1 An exam room is not required, but where one is provided it shall be located in the unrestricted area and shall comply with the following requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (Single-patient exam/observation room):

2.7-3.2.1.1 Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (2) (Space requirements)

2.7-3.2.1.2 Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (3) (Room features)

2.7-3.2.2 Use of a procedure room as an exam room shall be permitted.

2.7-3.3 Procedure Room

A procedure room is not required in an outpatient surgery facility, but where one is provided it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.3 (Procedure Room).

2.7-3.4 Outpatient Operating Rooms

See Section 2.1-3.2.4 (Operating Rooms) for requirements.

2.7-3.5 Pre- and Postoperative Patient Care Areas

2.7-3.5.1 General

Pre- and postoperative patient care areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care).

2.7-3.5.2 – 2.7-3.5.7 Reserved

2.7-3.5.8 Support Areas for Pre- and Postoperative Patient Care Areas

The support areas in this section shall be provided in or directly accessible to pre- and postoperative patient care areas as noted in this section.

2.7-3.5.8.1 Reserved

2.7-3.5.8.2 Nurse station. See Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) for requirements.

2.7-3.5.8.3 – 2.7-3.5.8.6 Reserved

2.7-3.5.8.7 Clinical sink. Provision of the clinical sink shall be permitted in one of the following locations:

(1) In a soiled workroom in the postoperative patient care area as described in Section 2.7-3.5.8.12 (Provisions for soiled linen and waste holding)

(2) In the soiled workroom in Section 2.7-3.7.12 (Support Areas Directly Accessible to the Semi-Restricted Area—Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) if the workroom is directly accessible to the postoperative patient care area

(3) In the soiled workroom in Section 2.7-3.8.12 (Other Support Areas in the Outpatient Surgery Facility—Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) if the workroom is directly accessible to the postoperative patient care area

2.7-3.5.8.8 Medication safety zone. ~~See~~ A medication safety zone shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

2.7-3.5.8.9 Nourishment area

(1) The nourishment area shall be directly accessible to the postoperative patient care area.

(2) See Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) for other requirements.

2.7-3.5.8.10 Ice-making equipment

(1) Ice-making equipment shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.10 (Ice-Making Equipment).

(2) Ice-making equipment shall not be located in the semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.5.8.11 Reserved

2.7-3.5.8.12 Provisions for soiled linen and waste holding. Location of these provisions in the soiled workroom required in Section 2.7-3.7.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be permitted if the soiled workroom is directly accessible to pre- and postoperative patient care areas.

2.7-3.5.8.13 Equipment and supply storage

(1) Reserved

(2) Location of storage for equipment and supplies in the clean equipment and supply storage room required in Section 2.7-3.7.13 (Clean Equipment and Clean and Sterile Supply Storage) shall be permitted if that storage room is directly accessible to pre- and postoperative patient care areas.

(3) Reserved

(4) Emergency equipment storage shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.7-3.5.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.7-3.5.9.1 Reserved

2.7-3.5.9.2 Staff toilet room

(1) A staff toilet room shall be immediately accessible to pre- and postoperative patient care areas.

(2) The toilets in the staff changing area shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.7-3.5.10 Support Areas for Patients and Visitors

2.7-3.5.10.1 Reserved

2.7-3.5.10.2 Patient toilet room

(1) Location

(a) A patient toilet room shall be directly accessible to each pre- and postoperative patient care area.

(b) Where separate pre- and postoperative patient care areas are provided, the patient toilet room(s) shall be permitted to be shared if directly accessible to preoperative and Phase II recovery areas.

(c) Where pre- and postoperative patient care stations that are single-patient rooms are used for airborne infection isolation patients, the toilet room shall be directly accessible from the patient care station.

(2) Number

(a) Additional toilets shall be provided at the ratio of one patient toilet for every eight patient care stations or fewer and for each major fraction thereof.

(b) Pre- and postoperative patient care stations that are single-patient rooms with directly accessible toilet rooms that serve only that private room shall not contribute to the patient care station count when determining the number of patient toilets to be provided.

2.7-3.5.10.3 Reserved

2.7-3.5.10.4 Visitor seating in Phase II recovery area. Where visitor seating is allowed in the recovery area, space for at least one seat for a visitor shall be provided within the boundaries of each patient care station.

2.7-3.6 Support Areas in the Semi-Restricted Area

The support areas in this section shall be provided in the semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.6.1 Reserved

2.7-3.6.2 Nurse or Control Station

2.7-3.6.2.1 The nurse or control station shall be permitted to be in the unrestricted area if it is directly accessible to the semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.6.2.2 The nurse or control station shall permit direct or remote visual observation of traffic into the semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.6.2.3 Access through all entries to the semi-restricted area shall be controlled.

2.7-3.6.3 – 2.7-3.6.5 Reserved

2.7-3.6.6 Hand Scrub Facilities

Hand scrub facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.6 (Hand Scrub Facilities).

2.7-3.6.7 – 2.7-3.6.12 Reserved

2.7-3.6.13 Equipment Storage

2.7-3.6.13.1 – 2.7-3.6.13.3 Reserved

2.7-3.6.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Emergency equipment storage shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.7-3.6.14 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.7-3.6.14.1 The environmental services room shall not be shared with areas outside the semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.6.14.2 The environmental services room shall be accessed from a semi-restricted corridor or area.

2.7-3.6.15 Sterile Processing

Where sterilization processes are conducted in the semi-restricted area, a sterile processing facility that meets requirements in Section 2.1-4.3.2 (Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing) shall be provided.

2.7-3.7 Support Areas Directly Accessible to the Semi-Restricted Area

The support areas in this section shall be directly accessible to the semi-restricted area of the surgery facility.

2.7-3.7.1 – 2.7-3.7.11 Reserved

2.7-3.7.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.7-3.7.12.1 General

(1) The room described in Section 2.1-4.3.2.2 (2) (Decontamination room) or in Section 2.1-4.3.3.3 (A room for gross decontamination and holding of instruments) shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

(2) Sharing of the soiled workroom or soiled holding room with the unrestricted area or another semi-restricted area shall be permitted if direct access is provided from the semi-restricted area and a separate entrance is provided from the unrestricted area.

(3) The soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall not have direct connection with operating rooms or other sterile activity rooms.

2.7-3.7.12.2 Soiled workroom

(1) Where a soiled workroom is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.2 (Soiled workroom).

(2) Where an alternative method of fluid waste disposal is provided, omission of the clinical sink shall be permitted.

2.7-3.7.12.3 Soiled holding room

(1) Where a soiled holding room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.3 (Soiled holding room).

(2) Where a soiled holding room is provided instead of a soiled workroom, provisions for disposal of fluid waste shall be provided elsewhere.

2.7-3.7.13 Clean Equipment and Clean and Sterile Supply Storage

Storage space shall be provided for clean equipment and clean and sterile supplies used in the semi-restricted and restricted areas.

2.7-3.7.13.1 General

(1) The storage space shall be permitted to be one room or area or a combination of rooms and/or areas.

(2) Location

(a) The storage room or area shall be separate from and have no direct connection with a soiled workroom or soiled holding room.

(b) The storage room or area shall be directly accessible to the semi-restricted area and shall be permitted to be directly accessible to the operating rooms.

(3) The clean workroom of a sterile processing facility in the semi-restricted area (Section 2.7-3.6.15) shall be permitted to serve this purpose.

(4) Where a storage room or area is directly accessible to an operating room, this room or area shall be designated as semi-restricted or restricted as needed by facility operations.

(5) Where a storage room or area is directly accessible only to a semi-restricted area, the storage room or area shall be designated as a semi-restricted area.

2.7-3.7.13.2 Space requirements

(1) Area. The combined floor area of the clean equipment and clean and sterile supply storage provided shall be a minimum of 50 square feet (4.65 square meters) for each operating room up to two plus an additional 25 square feet (2.33 square meters) per additional operating room(s) beyond two.

(2) Where more than one storage room or area is provided, the total square footage shall be equal to or greater than the square footage required in Section 2.7-3.7.13.2 (1) (Area).

2.7-3.7.13.3 Documentation area

(1) Location of documentation stations shall be permitted in the clean equipment and clean and sterile supply storage room or area.

(2) Where a documentation station is located in a storage room or area, it shall be in addition to the documentation area located in the operating room.

2.7-3.7.13.4 Sink. A sink shall not be permitted in this storage room or area unless it is part of a clean workroom in accordance with Section 2.7-3.6.15 (Sterile Processing).

2.7-3.7.13.5 Sterilizer. A sterilizer shall not be permitted in this storage room or area unless it is part of a clean workroom in accordance with Section 2.7-3.6.15 (Sterile Processing).

2.7-3.7.13.6 Medication dispensing units. Location of self-contained medication dispensing units shall be permitted in the clean equipment and clean and sterile storage room or area.

2.7-3.8 Other Support Areas in the Outpatient Surgery Facility

2.7-3.8.1 – 2.7-3.8.11 Reserved

2.7-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.7-3.8.12.1 A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in the surgery facility. This shall be permitted to be the same room required in Section 2.7-3.7.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) as indicated in Section 2.7-3.7.12.1 (2) (Sharing of the soiled workroom or soiled holding room…).

2.7-3.8.12.2 Where a soiled workroom is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.2 (Soiled Workroom).

2.7-3.8.12.3 Where a soiled holding room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.3 (Soiled Holding Room).

2.7-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.7-3.8.13.1 Clean linen storage

(1) Storage for clean linen shall be provided.

(2) Location of clean linen storage in the clean supply and equipment room in Section 2.7-3.7.13 (Clean Equipment and Clean and Sterile Supply Storage) shall be permitted.

2.7-3.8.13.2 ~~2.7-3.8.13.4~~ Reserved

2.7-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.7-3.8.13.4 Reserved

2.7-3.8.13.5 Medical gas storage. Space for supply and storage of medical gas(es) used in the facility, including space for reserve cylinders, shall be provided and protected in accordance with NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.

2.7-3.8.13.6 Storage for large clinical equipment. Where equipment-intensive procedures are performed or large mobile equipment is used for surgery, storage space in addition to that in Section 2.7-3.7.13 (Clean Equipment and Clean and Sterile Supply Storage) shall be provided.

2.7-3.8.14 – 2.7-3.8.15 Reserved

2.7-3.8.16 Storage for Blood, Tissue, and Pathological Specimens

Where storage of blood, tissue, and pathological specimens is required, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.7-3.8.16.1 Provisions for storage of blood, tissue, and pathological specimens, including equipment, temperature controls, alarms, and monitoring, shall meet the requirements of the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) and other applicable regulatory requirements.

2.7-3.8.16.2 Refrigerated storage facilities

(1) A refrigerator shall be provided.

(2) Where the refrigerator is used to store blood for transfusions, it shall be equipped with temperature-monitoring and alarm signals.

2.7-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.7-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

A staff lounge shall be provided in facilities with three or more operating rooms.

2.7-3.9.2 – 2.7-3.9.3 Reserved

2.7-3.9.4 Staff Changing Area

2.7-3.9.4.1 A staff changing area with one or more private changing rooms or separate areas shall be provided for male and female staff working in the semi-restricted and restricted areas of the surgery facility.

2.7-3.9.4.2 Provision of a unisex locker area with one or more private changing rooms shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.7-3.9.4.3 Staff changing area(s) shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area).

2.7-3.9.5 Staff Shower

2.7-3.9.5.1 At least one staff shower shall be provided that is readily accessible to the semi-restricted area and recovery areas.

2.7-3.9.5.2 Location of the staff shower in the staff changing area shall be permitted.

2.7-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.7-3.10.1 Reserved

2.7-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

See Section 2.7-3.5.10.2 (Patient toilet room) for requirements.

2.7-3.10.3 Patient Changing and Preparation Area

2.7-3.10.3.1 Space shall be provided for patients to change from street clothing into patient gowns and to prepare for surgery.

(1) This changing area shall be permitted to consist of private holding room(s) or cubicle(s) and/or a separate changing area.

(2) Patient care station(s) in the pre- and postoperative patient care area shall be permitted to serve this function.

2.7-3.10.3.2 Where a separate changing area is provided, it shall include the following:

(1) Provisions for secure storage of patients' belongings

(2) Access to toilet(s) without passing through a public space

(3) Space for changing or gowning

2.7-3.10.4 Storage for Patient Belongings

Where a separate changing area is not provided, provisions shall be made for secure storage of patients' belongings.

2.7-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.7-4.1 – 2.7-4.2 Reserved

2.7-4.3 Sterile Processing

2.7-4.3.1 Reserved

2.7-4.3.2 Facilities for On-Site Sterile Processing Outside the Semi-Restricted Area

Where sterilization processes are conducted in the outpatient surgery facility outside the semi-restricted area, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.3.2.2 (Two-room sterile processing facility) shall be met.

2.7-4.3.3 Support Areas for Facilities Using Off-Site Sterile Processing

For facilities where sterile processing services are provided off-site, see Section 2.1-4.3.3 (Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Sterile Processing) for requirements.

2.7-4.4 Linen Services

Designated separate spaces shall be provided for clean linen storage and soiled linen holding.

2.7-4.4.1 Location of clean linen storage in the unrestricted area, including in the clean equipment and supply room in Section 2.7-3.7.13 (Clean Equipment and Clean and Sterile Supply Storage), shall be permitted.

2.7-4.4.2 Soiled linen storage shall be permitted to be a portion of the soiled workroom in Section 2.7-3.7.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.7-5 Building Support Facilities

2.7-5.1 Reserved

2.7-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) for requirements.

2.7-5.3 Environmental Services

An environmental services room(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.7-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.7-6.1 General

Public and administrative areas are unrestricted areas and shall be permitted to be accessed from unrestricted or semi-restricted corridors.

2.7-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.7-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas) and the amendments in this section.

2.7-6.3.1 – 2.7-6.3.3 Reserved

2.7-6.3.4 Multipurpose or Consultation Room

2.7-6.3.4.1 At least one private multipurpose or consultation room shall be provided in the unrestricted area.

2.7-6.3.4.2 Shared use of an office or interview room for this purpose shall be permitted.

2.7-6.4 Support Areas for Staff

See Section 2.1-3.9.3 (Storage for Staff) for requirements.

2.7-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.7-7.1 Reserved

2.7-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

In addition to the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings), the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.7-7.2.1 Reserved

2.7-7.2.2 Architectural Details

2.7-7.2.2.1 Corridor width. The requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.1 (Corridor width) shall be met as amended in this section:

(1) Where corridors are used for stretcher and gurney transport, at least one corridor that connects the restricted area and the pre- and postoperatvie patient care area(s) ~~surgical suite and the PACU~~ to an exit shall have a minimum width of 6 feet (1.83 meters).

(2) Where corridors are used for bed transport, at least one corridor that connects the restricted area ~~The corridor connecting the semi-restricted area~~ and the pre- and postoperative patient care area(s) shall have a minimum width of 8 feet (2.44 meters) ~~to accommodate transport of patients between preoperative, procedure, and post-anesthesia recovery areas~~.

(3) Staff-only corridors shall be permitted to be a minimum of 3 feet 8 inches (112 centimeters) wide unless a greater width is required by occupant load calculations per local and state building codes.

2.7-7.2.3 Surfaces

Surfaces in the outpatient surgery center shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

2.7-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems).

~~**2.7-8.1 Reserved**~~

~~**2.7-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.7-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.7-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~**2.7-8.4.1 Medical Gas Systems**~~

~~Flammable anesthetics shall not be used in outpatient surgery facilities.~~

~~**2.7-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~**2.7-8.5.1** See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems) for requirements in addition to those in this section.~~

~~**2.7-8.5.2 Emergency Communication System**~~

~~All operating rooms and Phase I post-anesthesia recovery room(s) shall be equipped with an emergency communication system that incorporates push activation of an emergency call switch.~~

~~**2.7-8.6 Fire Alarm System**~~

~~A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System).~~

~~**2.7-8.7 Elevators**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.7 (Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

2.8 Specific Requirements for Freestanding Emergency Care Facilities

2.8-1 General

2.8-1.1 Application

2.8-1.1.1 Freestanding Emergency Care Facilities

2.8-1.1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to a freestanding emergency care facility that is an emergency department physically separate from (i.e., not located on the same campus as) a hospital emergency department and is intended to provide emergency services 24 hours a day 7 days a week and receive patients arriving by ambulance.

2.8-1.1.1.2 The freestanding emergency care facility shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.8-1.1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to freestanding emergency care facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.8-1.1.2 Rural Emergency Hospital (REH)

2.8-1.1.2.1 When conversion from a critical access hospital or small hospital to a rural emergency hospital (REH) requires no renovation or expansion, the requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings* shall not apply.

2.8-1.1.2.2 Major renovation, remodel, or expansion of an REH shall comply with the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.8-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.8-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

Patient care and diagnostic areas for freestanding emergency care facilities shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.8-3.1 Reserved

2.8-3.2 Reception and Triage Area

See Section 2.8-6.2.2 (Reception/Triage Area) for requirements.

2.8-3.3 Communications with EMS

2.8-3.3.1 Communication connections to emergency medical services (EMS) shall be provided.

2.8-3.3.2 Where an EMS base station is provided, the space where it is installed ~~it~~ shall be designed to reduce noise, distractions, and interruptions during communications.

2.8-3.4 Treatment Room or Area

2.8-3.4.1 General

2.8-3.4.1.1 Application

(1) The patient care spaces in this section shall be provided in the freestanding emergency care facility unless otherwise noted.

(2) Treatment rooms or areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.2.2.1 (Exam Rooms—General) as amended in this section.

(3) Provision of single-patient treatment rooms, multiple-patient treatment rooms, or a combination of the two shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.8-3.4.1.2 Patient privacy. Exam/treatment rooms used for pelvic exams shall allow for the foot of the exam table to face away from the door.

2.8-3.4.2 Single-Patient Treatment Room

2.8-3.4.2.1 Space requirements

(1) Area. Each single-patient treatment room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters).

(2) Clearances

(a) Room size shall permit a room arrangement with a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at each side and at the foot of the exam table or recliner in the fully extended position.

(b) A room arrangement in which an exam table~~,~~ or recliner in the fully extended position, or chair is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served (resulting in the reduction of minimum clearance above) shall be permitted.

(3) Where renovation work is undertaken and it is not possible to meet the minimum space requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (2) (Single-patient exam/observation room—Space requirements), a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) shall be permitted.

2.8-3.4.2.2 Room features. The treatment room shall contain the following:

(1) Portable or fixed exam light as indicated in Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (1) (Lighting for exam/treatment/trauma rooms)

(2) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation

(3) Space for a visitor's chair

(4) Handwashing station that complies with Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements)

(5) Storage for supplies

(6) Space for medical equipment

(7) View panel ~~designed for patient visual privacy~~ adjacent to and/or in the door designed for observation of the patient and maintaining patient privacy

(8) Medical gas station outlets and vacuum inlets shall meet the requirements in Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

2.8-3.4.3 Multiple-Patient Treatment Room

2.8-3.4.3.1 General

(1) Space and provisions for several patients shall be permitted in a multiple-patient treatment room that meets the requirements in this section.

(2) Combining bays to accommodate individuals of size shall be permitted. See Section 2.8-3.4.5 (Treatment Room for Individuals of Size) for more information.

2.8-3.4.3.2 Space requirements

(1) Area. Multiple-patient treatment rooms shall have separate patient bays or cubicles with a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient care station.

(2) Clearances. The following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(a) 5 feet (1.52 meters) between the sides of adjacent patient beds

(b) 4 feet (1.22 meters) between the sides of patient beds and adjacent walls or partitions

2.8-3.4.3.3 Patient care station features. Each bay or cubicle shall contain the following:

(1) Exam light. See Section 2.1-8.3.4.2 (1) (Lighting for exam/treatment/trauma rooms) for requirements.

(2) Accommodations for written or electronic documentation

(3) Space for a visitor's chair

2.8-3.4.3.4 Handwashing station

(1) At least one handwashing station(s) shall be provided in each multiple-patient treatment room.

(2) Handwashing stations shall comply with sections 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements) and 2.1-3.8.7.3 (Handwashing Stations—Additional requirements for handwashing stations that serve multiple patient care stations).

2.8-3.4.3.5 Supply storage. Storage for supplies shall be immediately accessible to each bay or cubicle in the multiple-patient treatment room.

2.8-3.4.4 Trauma/Resuscitation Room

A trauma/resuscitation room(s) for emergency procedures shall be provided that meets the requirements in this section.

2.8-3.4.4.1 General

(1) When not in use for a trauma patient, this room shall be permitted to be subdivided with cubicle curtains or movable partitions to create multiple patient treatment stations if all of the following are true.

(a) Each resulting patient treatment station (bay or cubicle) meets all the physical environment requirements of the respective service, including:

(i) Area. See Section 2.8-3.4.3.2 (1) (Area).

(ii) Clearance around gurney. See Section 2.8-3.4.3.2 (2) (Clearances).

(iii) Direct access to a handwashing station in the room or a scrub sink outside the room

(iv) Electrical receptacles

(v) Medical gas and vacuum systems

(b) The physical space and operational plan accommodate conversion back to a trauma room.

(c) Cubicle curtains, movable partitions, or other temporary room dividers will not affect required trauma room area or clearances when in the stowed position.

(2) When not in use as a trauma room, the trauma/resuscitation room shall be permitted to be used for treatment of individuals of size providing it meets the requirements in Section 2.8-3.4.6 (Treatment Room for Individuals of Size).

2.8-3.4.4.2 Space requirements

(1) For a single-patient trauma/resuscitation room:

(a) Area. Each trauma/resuscitation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 250 square feet (23.23 square meters).

(b) Clearances. A minimum clearance of 5 feet (1.52 meters) shall be provided around all sides of the gurney.

(2) For a multiple-patient trauma/resuscitation room, where one is provided:

(a) Area. The minimum clear floor area for each patient care station defined by privacy curtains (a bay) shall be 200 square feet (18.58 square meters).

(b) Clearances. A minimum clearance of 5 feet (1.52 meters) shall be provided around all sides of the gurney, with 10 feet (3.05 meters) between each ~~patient bed or~~ gurney.

2.8-3.4.4.3 The trauma/resuscitation room shall contain the following:

(1) Space for storage of supplies

(2) Picture archiving and communications system (PACS), film illuminators, or other systems to allow viewing of images and films in the room

(3) A handwashing station(s) that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station)

(4) Space for a code cart

(5) Exam lights

(6) Accommodations for written or electronic documentation

(7) Physiological monitoring equipment

(8) Storage for personal protective equipment

(9) Medical gas station outlets and vacuum inlets. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

2.8-3.4.4.4 Door openings. Doorways leading from the ambulance entrance to the trauma/resuscitation room shall have a minimum clear width of 6 feet (1.83 meters) and a height of 6 feet 11.5 inches (2.12 meters).

2.8-3.4.5 Treatment Room for Individuals of Size

The freestanding emergency care facility shall provide treatment room(s) that can accommodate individuals of size.

2.8-3.4.5.1 Design requirements. These room(s) shall meet the requirements in this section and the requirements in the sections listed here:

(1) Section 2.1-2.1 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size—General)

(2) Section 2.1-2.7 (Single-Patient Exam/Observation Room for Care of Individuals of Size)

(3) Section 2.1-2.10 (Special Design Elements for Spaces for Care of Individuals of Size)

2.8-3.4.5.2 Transfer side clearance. Where ceiling- or wall-mounted lifts are provided, a clearance of 5 feet 6 inches (1.68 meters) from the edge of the expanded-capacity exam ~~patient~~ table ~~or bed~~ shall be provided on the transfer side.

2.8-3.4.5.3 Use for more than one patient. When not in use for an individual of size, this treatment room shall be permitted to be subdivided with cubicle curtains or movable partitions to accommodate more than one patient if each resulting bay or cubicle meets all electrical and medical gas requirements for emergency department treatment areas.

2.8-3.4.5.4 Patient toilet room. A patient toilet room for individuals of size that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-2.6 (Patient Toilet Room for Individuals of Size) shall be readily accessible to the treatment room for individuals of size as determined by Section 1.2-6.4.1 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

2.8-3.4.6 Geriatric Treatment Room or Area

2.8-3.4.6.1 Where geriatric treatment rooms or areas are provided, they shall be designed to accommodate the needs of geriatric patients.

2.8-3.4.6.2 Design of emergency department geriatric treatment rooms or areas shall be assessed for patient fall risks as part of the safety risk assessment. For additional requirements, see Section 1.2-4.4 (Fall Prevention Assessment).

2.8-3.4.7 Fast-Track Area

Where provided, the fast-track area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.8-3.4.2 (Single-Patient Treatment Room) as amended in this section:

2.8-3.4.7.1 Single-patient exam rooms with a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) shall be permitted.

2.8-3.4.7.2 Where a waiting area is designated for the fast-track area, an immediately accessible patient toilet room shall be provided.

2.8-3.4.8 Low-Acuity Patient Treatment Area

Where a low-acuity patient treatment area is provided in the emergency care facility, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.8-3.4.8.1 General. Low-acuity patient treatment stations shall not be permitted to replace other emergency facility treatment room types in their entirety.

2.8-3.4.8.2 Low-acuity patient treatment station. Each patient treatment station shall be a bay or cubicle.

(1) Space requirements

(a) Area. Each patient treatment station shall have a minimum clear floor area of 40 square feet (3.72 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 5 feet 6 inches (1.68 meters).

(b) Clearances.

(i) Each bay or cubicle shall accommodate a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) at the side(s), head, or foot of the patient chair that corresponds with the care provider's expected work position(s).

(ii) A room arrangement in which a chair or recliner in a fully extended position, is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served (resulting in reduction of minimum clearance above) shall be permitted.

(2) Patient treatment station features. See Section 2.8-3.4.3.3 (Patient care station features) for requirements.

2.8-3.4.8.3 Supply storage. Storage for supplies shall be immediately accessible to the low-acuity patient treatment area.

2.8-3.4.8.4 Privacy. Provisions shall be made for patient privacy in accordance with the following:

(1) Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy)

(2) Table 1.2-6 (Design Criteria for Speech Privacy for Enclosed Rooms and Open-Plan Spaces)

2.8-3.4.8.5 Handwashing station

(1) At least one handwashing station shall be provided in each low-acuity patient treatment area.

(2) Handwashing stations shall meet the requirements in the following sections:

(a) Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements)

(b) Section 2.1-3.8.7.3 (Handwashing Station—Additional requirements for handwashing stations that serve multiple patient care stations)

2.8-3.4.8.6 Building system components

(1) For electrical receptacle requirements, see Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(2) For nurse call requirements, see Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

(3) For station outlet requirements, see Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.8-3.4.9 Human Decontamination Facilities

Capacity for patient decontamination shall be provided. This shall be permitted to be either of the following:

2.8-3.4.9.1 A separate, temporary mobile unit that is readily accessible for deployment. This mobile unit shall meet the requirements in Section 2.8-3.4.9.2 (A human decontamination room) and Chapter 2.13, Specific Requirements for Mobile/Transportable Medical Units.

2.8-3.4.9.2 A human decontamination room

(1) Location

(a) The door of this room that opens to the interior of the emergency facility shall provide direct access into a corridor or into a treatment room, swing into the decontamination room, and be lockable against ingress from the corridor or treatment room.

(b) This section does not preclude provision of additional decontamination capability at other entrances.

(2) Entrances. A decontamination room shall have a dedicated and secured outside entry door located no less than 10 feet (3.05 meters) in any direction from the next closest entrance.

(a) This entrance shall be lighted and ~~protected from the environment in the same way as the ambulance entrance.~~ shall have an emergency vehicle entry cover that shall provide shelter for both the patient and the emergency medical crew during transfer between an emergency vehicle and the building.

(b) This entrance shall have a contrasting boundary line on the ground that is 3 feet (91.44 centimeter) from each side of the door and extends 6 feet (1.83 meters) from the exterior wall of the freestanding emergency care facility. The word “DECON” shall be painted within these boundaries.

(3) Space requirements. The room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(4) Privacy. Means of patient privacy shall be provided.

(5) Architectural details and surfaces

(a) The room shall have smooth, nonporous, ~~scrubbable,~~ nonabsorptive, nonperforated surfaces that are able to be cleaned and disinfected.

(b) The floor of the decontamination room shall be seamless and self-coving to a height of no less than 6 inches (15.24 centimeters).

(6) Building system requirements

(a) Ventilation system~~.~~

(i) The human decontamination room shall be externally exhausted separately from the general exhaust system.

(ii) The exhaust vent at the roof shall be labeled as decontamination exhaust and extend 10 feet above roof deck.

(b) Electrical system

(i) For electrical receptacle requirements, see Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(ii) The human decontamination room shall be designed as a wet location as defined by *The National Electrical Code (NEC).*

(c) Plumbing system

(i) The room shall be equipped with a minimum of two hand-held shower heads with temperature controls and a floor drain(s).

(ii)Where required by local codes or other jurisdictional authorities, a dedicated holding tank shall be provided.

(iii) Rinsate shall be prevented from leaving the room.

(iv) Acid-resistant fixtures shall be provided.

(v) For medical gas system requirements, see Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(d) Communications system. See Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities) for emergency call device requirements.

2.8-3.5 Special Patient Care Areas

2.8-3.5.1 Reserved

2.8-3.5.2 Airborne Infection Isolation (AII) Room

At least one AII room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.3.2 (AII Room) shall be provided. The need for additional AII rooms shall be determined by an ICRA.

2.8-3.5.3 Rooms Serving Behavioral and Mental Health Patients

2.8-3.5.3.1 General

(1) Application

(a) Where rooms are specifically constructed for care of behavioral and mental health patients, they shall meet the requirements in this section.

(b) The health care organization shall perform a behavioral and mental health risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6) to determine the types and numbers of rooms to be provided.

(2) Location. The location of the designated behavioral and mental health room(s) shall facilitate staff observation and monitoring of patients in these areas.

2.8-3.5.3.2 Secure holding room. Where a secure holding room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(1) The secure holding room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) and a maximum wall length of 12 feet (3.66 meters).

(2) The secure holding room shall be designed to prevent injury to patients.

(a) A minimum ceiling height of 9 feet (2.74 meters) shall be provided. Where renovation work is undertaken and it is not possible to meet this minimum requirement, see Section 1.1-3 (Renovation) for guidance.

(b) Finishes, light fixtures, vents and diffusers, and sprinklers shall be impact-, tamper-, and ligature-resistant.

(c) There shall not be any electrical outlets, medical gas outlets, or similar devices.

(d) There shall be no sharp corners, edges, or protrusions, and the walls shall be free of objects or accessories of any kind.

(e) Secure holding room doors shall swing out and shall have hardware on the exterior side only.

(f) A small impact-resistant view panel or window that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided in the wall adjacent to the door or in the door for staff observation of the patient.

(i) The glazing in the view panel or window shall be fabricated with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing or with any glazing that meets or exceeds the requirements for Class 1.4 per ASTM F1233: *Standard Test Method for Security Glazing Material and Systems*.

(ii) Use of tempered glass for the view panel or window shall be permitted.

(3) The minimum clear door opening for secure holding rooms shall be 44.5 inches (1.13 meters).

(4) Patient toilet room. A ligature-resistant patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Ligature-resistant design features) shall be provided immediately accessible to the secure holding room.

2.8-3.5.3.3 Flexible secure treatment room. Where provided, a secure treatment room shall meet the requirements in sections 2.8-3.5.3.2 (Secure holding room) and 2.8-3.4.2 (Single-Patient Treatment Room) with the exceptions in this section.

(1) Location of the handwashing station outside the room shall be permitted if it is adjacent to the secure flex room.

(2) Handwashing sinks, electrical outlets, medical gas outlets, vacuum inlets, and similar features shall be permitted in the room if a means for covering and securing them is provided. Such means shall be under the control of staff.

(3) The room shall have a maximum wall length of 12 feet (3.66 meters).

2.8-3.5.3.4 Behavioral and mental health treatment room. Where provided, a behavioral and mental health treatment room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.8-3.4.2 (Single-Patient Treatment Room) and the requirements in this section.

(1) All door hardware, sinks, finishes, light fixtures, sprinklers, diffusers, grilles, and outlets shall be tamper- and ligature-resistant.

(2) Locks shall be provided on storage devices and cabinetry to prevent patient access.

(3) The room shall be provided with features to limit the patient's ability to convert architectural features or equipment into weapons, as follows:

(a) Cabinetry, or other means, shall be provided in the room to enclose or store typical treatment equipment when this room is used for a behavioral and mental health patient.

(b) Rails, grab bars, closure devices, armatures, or similar devices shall be designed to prevent removal by providing tamper-resistant hardware and structural attachments to withstand forceable attempts at removal.

2.8-3.5.4 Seclusion Room

Where a seclusion room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.11-3.~~2.~~7 (Seclusion Room).

2.8-3.5.5 Sexual Assault Forensic Exam Room

Where a sexual assault forensic exam room is provided in the freestanding emergency care facility, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.3 (Sexual assault forensic exam room).

2.8-3.5.6 Observation Beds

At least one observation bed with full cardiac monitoring shall be provided. See Section 2.5-3.4 (Observation Facilities) for more information.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The behavioral health crisis unit section below has been relocated to a new chapter: Chapter 2.12, *Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral Health Crisis Centers*.

2.8-3.5.7 Behavioral Health Crisis Unit

The behavioral health crisis unit shall meet the requirements in chapter 2.12, Specific Requirements for Behavioral Health Crisis Centers.

~~**2.8-3.5.7.1 General**~~

~~(1) Application. Where a behavioral health crisis unit is provided in the freestanding emergency care facility, the unit shall comply with the requirements in this section.~~

(2) Location. The behavioral health crisis unit shall be permitted to be part of the freestanding emergency care facility or a separate, stand-alone facility.

(3) Shared services. Sharing of clinical and ancillary services with the rest of the freestanding emergency care facility shall be permitted when these shared services are located and configured to accommodate behavioral health programmatic requirements for safety, security, and other clinical considerations. See sections 1.2-4.6 (Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) and 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for additional requirements.

(4) Environment of care

(a) Environmental safety and prevention of harm

(i) The behavioral and mental health risk assessment in Section 1.2-4.6 shall establish requirements to mitigate risk of harm to self and others for the therapeutic environment.

(ii) Consideration for harm prevention shall be given in designing architectural details and selecting surface materials and building system equipment. See sections 2.5-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) and 2.5-8 (Building Systems) for requirements.

(iii) Hidden alcoves and blind corners or areas shall be avoided.

(iv) Visual observation

- Means for visual observation of unit corridors and patient care areas shall be provided.
- Electronic surveillance shall be permitted but shall not be the only means of visual observation.

(b) Security

(i) The design shall provide the level of security needed for the specific type of service or program provided as well as for the age level, acuity, and risk of the patients served (e.g., geriatric, acute behavioral and mental health, or forensic for adult, child, and adolescent care). See sections 1.2-4.6 (Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) and 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for requirements.

(ii) Perimeter security. Where provided, perimeter security shall meet the following requirements:

(i) A perimeter security system shall be designed to:

- Contain patients within the patient care unit until clinical staff and/or facility security can escort them to an adjacent compartment or an exit.
- Prevent elopement and contraband smuggling.
- Include provisions for monitoring and controlling visitor access and egress.

(j) Openings in the perimeter security system (e.g., windows, doors, gates) shall be controlled by locks (manual, electric, or magnetic) where required by the security risk assessment.

(iii) Use of security cameras and other security measures consistent with the security risk assessment shall be permitted.

2.8-3.5.7.2 Patient care areas. The type of patient care areas provided shall be determined by the services provided and based on the safety risk assessment.

(1) Exam/treatment room

(a) An exam/treatment room(s) shall be provided for medical assessment or triage of patients in the unit.

(b) Location of this room elsewhere in the emergency facility shall be permitted provided the room meets the requirements in Section 2.8-3.5.7.1 (4) (Environment of care) and is immediately accessible to the behavioral health crisis unit.

(2) Observation room or area. Where an observation room or area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(a) Space requirements

(i) Single-patient observation room. Each single-patient observation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters).

(ii) Multiple-patient observation area. A minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient shall be provided.

(b) Clearances

(i) Single-patient observation room(s)

(k) Room size shall permit a room arrangement with a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on each side and at the foot of the exam table, recliner, or chair.

(l) A room arrangement in which an exam table, recliner, or chair is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served shall be permitted.

(ii) Multiple-patient observation area

(m) A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided between recliners or chairs.

(n) A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between walls or partitions and the sides of recliners in a multiple-patient observation area.

(c) Handwashing station. A handwashing station(s) that meets the requirements of Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided.

(d) Patient toilet room

(i) Patient toilet room(s) shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

(ii) Single-patient observation room

- One patient toilet room shall be provided for each six single-patient observation rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

(o) This patient toilet room ratio shall not be required where each single-patient observation room has a directly accessible toilet room.

(iii) Multiple-patient observation area. One patient toilet room shall be provided for each eight patient care stations and for each major fraction thereof.

(e) Shower room. A minimum of one shower room that meets the requirements in Section 2.8-3.10.3 (Patient Shower Room) shall be immediately accessible to the patient observation room or area.

(i) Location of the shower in a patient toilet room shall be permitted.

(ii) A shower room shall not be required where each patient care station is a single-patient room directly accessible to a toilet room containing a shower that serves only the single-patient room.

(3) Calming/comfort room Quiet room. A calming/comfort room quiet room shall be provided for a patient who needs to be alone for a short period but does not require a seclusion room or secure holding room.

(a) The calming/comfort room quiet room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(b) The calming/comfort room quiet room shall be permitted to serve as a consultation room.

(4) Secure holding room

(a) Where a secure holding room is provided in the behavioral health crisis unit, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.8-3.5.3.2 (Secure holding room).

(b) Use of a secure holding room located elsewhere in the emergency facility shall be permitted.

2.8-3.5.7.3 Support areas for the behavioral health crisis unit

(1) Nurse station. A nurse station positioned and sized to meet the behavioral and mental health program requirements shall be provided to allow staff to observe patient care areas.

(2) Medication safety zone. A medication safety zone shall be provided. See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

(3) Outdoor areas. Where outdoor areas are provided, they shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Fences and walls. Fences and walls serving a locked patient care unit shall:

(i) Be designed to hinder climbing.

(ii) Be installed with tamper-resistant hardware.

(iii) Have a minimum height of 10 feet (3.05 meters) above the outdoor area elevation.

(iv) Be anchored to withstand the body force of a 350-pound (158.76-kilogram) person.

(b) Gates or doors. Where provided, gates or doors in the fence or wall shall:

(i) Swing out of the outdoor area.

(ii) Have the hinge installed on the outside of the outdoor area.

(iii) Be provided with a locking mechanism that has been coordinated with life safety exiting requirements.

(c) Plantings

(i) Trees and bushes shall not be placed adjacent to the fence or wall.

(ii) Plants selected for use shall not be toxic.

(d) Lighting

(i) Luminaires shall have tamper-proof lenses.

(ii) Luminaires shall not be accessible to patients.

(iii) Poles supporting luminaires shall not be capable of being climbed.

(e) Security cameras. Where provided, security cameras shall view the entire outdoor area and shall not be accessible to patients.

(f) Furniture. Where provided, furniture shall be secured to the ground. Furniture shall not be placed in locations where it can be used to climb the fence or wall.

(g) Elevated courtyards or outdoor areas located above the ground floor level shall not contain skylights or unprotected walkways or ledges.

2.8 3.5.7.4 Other behavioral health crisis unit support areas. The behavioral health crisis unit shall contain the following support rooms or areas. Unless otherwise noted, sharing these spaces with the emergency care facility shall be permitted where the spaces are readily accessible to the behavioral health crisis unit.

(1) Intake room or area. An intake room or area shall be provided.

(a) A lockable storage room or locker shall be provided for the storage of patients' personal property.

(b) The consultation room shall be permitted to serve as the intake room.

(2) Consultation room. Where provided, the consultation room shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Space requirement. The consultation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

(b) The consultation room shall be designed for acoustic and visual privacy. See Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms) for acoustic requirements.

(c) Where a consultation room located elsewhere in the emergency care facility is adjacent to the behavioral health crisis unit, it shall be permitted to be shared with the behavioral health crisis unit.

~~(3) Nourishment area. A nourishment area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) shall be provided.~~

~~(4) Clean workroom or clean supply room. A clean workroom or clean supply room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) shall be provided.~~

~~(5) Soiled workroom or soiled holding room. A soiled workroom or soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.~~

~~(6) Equipment and supply storage. Equipment and supply storage that meets the requirements in Section 2.8-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) shall be provided.~~

~~(7) Environmental services room. An environmental services room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room) shall be provided.~~

~~**2.8-3.5.7.5 Staff support areas for the behavioral health crisis unit.** A minimum of one staff toilet room shall be directly accessible to the behavioral health crisis unit.~~

~~**2.8-3.5.7.6 Support areas for families and visitors.** A waiting and/or lounge area for family and visitors shall be readily accessible to the behavioral health crisis unit.~~

2.8-3.6 Imaging Services

2.8-3.6.1 At minimum, radiography facilities shall be provided. See Section 2.3-3.7 ~~2.1-3.5.4~~ (Radiography Facilities) for requirements.

2.8-3.6.2 Where other imaging services are provided, they shall meet the requirements for those services in Chapter 2.3, *Specific Requirements for Outpatient Imaging Facilities*. ~~Section 2.1-3.5 (Imaging Services).~~

2.8-3.7 Reserved

2.8-3.8 Support Areas for Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.8-3.8.1 Reserved

2.8-3.8.2 Nurse Station

A nurse station for staff work and charting shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) as amended in this section.

2.8-3.8.2.1 Nurse master station and central monitoring equipment shall be provided.

2.8-3.8.2.2 Decentralized nurse stations near clusters of treatment rooms shall be permitted.

2.8-3.8.2.3 Visual observation of traffic into the patient care and diagnostic areas ~~unit~~ shall be provided from the nurse station.

2.8-3.8.3 – 2.8-3.8.10 Reserved

2.8-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

A clean workroom(s) or clean supply room(s)/area(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.8-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom(s) or soiled holding room(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.8-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.8-3.8.13.1 Reserved

2.8-3.8.13.2 Storage shall be provided for general medical/surgical emergency supplies, medications, and equipment. This storage shall be located out of traffic and under staff control.

2.8-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair and gurney storage. A storage area for wheelchairs and gurneys for arriving patients shall be located out of traffic with access to emergency entrances.

2.8-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Emergency equipment storage shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.8-3.8.14 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room(s) directly accessible from patient care and diagnostic areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.8-3.8.15 Human Waste Disposal Facilities

2.8-3.8.15.1 Provisions for disposal of liquid waste shall be provided that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12.2 (2) (Soiled workroom—Where a fluid waste management system...).

2.8-3.8.15.2 A clinical sink with a bedpan-rinsing device in the soiled workroom in Section 2.8-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be permitted to serve this function.

2.8-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

Staff lounge, lockers, and toilets shall be immediately accessible to patient care and diagnostic areas.

2.8-3.9.1 Staff Lounge Facilities

Lounge facilities of no less than 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) shall be provided.

2.8-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

2.8-3.9.2.1 A staff toilet room shall be readily accessible to the patient care and diagnostic areas.

2.8-3.9.2.2 Each staff toilet room shall contain a toilet and a handwashing station.

2.8-3.9.2.3 Staff toilet rooms shall be permitted to be unisex.

2.8-3.9.3 Staff Storage Facilities

2.8-3.9.3.1 Securable lockers, closets, or cabinet compartments for the personal articles of staff shall be provided.

2.8-3.9.3.2 Where coat storage is provided, storage of coats in closets or cabinets on each floor or in a central staff locker area shall be permitted.

2.8-3.10 Support Areas for Families, Patients, and Visitors

2.8-3.10.1 Reserved

2.8-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.8-3.10.2.1 A minimum of one patient toilet room shall be provided for each six treatment rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

2.8-3.10.2.2 Each patient toilet room shall contain a toilet and a handwashing station

2.8-3.10.2.3 Ligature-resistant design features. Where patient toilet rooms are required by the safety risk assessment to have ligature-resistant design features, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

2.8-3.10.3 Patient Shower Room

Where a patient shower room is provided, the following requirements shall be met:

2.8-3.10.3.1 Space requirements

(1) Space for patient dressing

(2) Space to accommodate staff assistance

2.8-3.10.3.2 Ligature-resistant design features

(1) Where patient shower rooms are required by the safety risk assessment to have ligature-resistant design features, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

(2) Shower curtain rods shall not be permitted.

2.8-3.10.3.3 Location of the shower in a patient toilet room shall be permitted.

2.8-4 Patient Support Facilities

Where any services in this section are provided via contractual agreement, at minimum space shall be provided in the facility to support safe provision of those services in accordance with the continuity of operations plan for the facility.

2.8-4.1 Laboratory Services

See Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) for requirements.

2.8-4.2 Pharmacy Services

2.8-4.2.1 At minimum, a medication preparation room shall be provided~~. See~~ in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

2.8-4.2.2 Where a pharmacy is provided~~, see~~ the requirements in Section 2.1-4.2 (Pharmacy Services) shall be met~~for requirements~~.

2.8-4.3 Sterile Processing

~~See Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) for requirements~~. Where sterile processing is performed, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) shall be met.

2.8-4.4 Linen Services

~~See Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) for facility requirements.~~ Where linen processed, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) shall be met.

2.8-4.5 Food and Nutrition Services

~~See Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) for requirements.~~ Where a nourishment area or room is provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) shall be met.

2.8-5 Building Support Facilities

Where any services in this section are provided via contractual agreement, at a minimum space must be provided in the facility to support safe provision of those services in accordance with the functional program and continuity of operations plan for the facility.

2.8-5.1 Materials Management

Materials management facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~See~~ Section 2.1-5.1 (Materials Management~~) for facility requirements~~.

2.8-5.2 Waste Management

Waste management facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~See~~ Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) ~~for facility requirements~~.

2.8-5.3 Environmental Services

Environmental services facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~See~~ Section 2.1-5.3 (Environmental Services~~) for requirements~~.

2.8-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

Engineering and maintenance services facilities shall meet the requirements in ~~See~~ Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services) ~~for facility requirements~~.

2.8-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.8-6.1 General

2.8-6.1.1 Reserved

2.8-6.1.2 Security

2.8-6.1.2.1 The emergency department shall be designed to assure that access control can be maintained at all times.

2.8-6.1.2.2 Security station. Where a security station is provided, it shall:

(1) Be located near the emergency entrances and triage/reception area.

(2) Have a means of observing public waiting areas and emergency care facility entrances, including pedestrian and ambulance entrances.

(3) Have a means of controlling access.

2.8-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas) and the requirements in this section.

2.8-6.2.1 Entrances

2.8-6.2.1.1 General

(1) Wayfinding for the freestanding emergency care facility shall clearly define the access pathways to the emergency facility entrance from public thoroughfares.

(2) Where public entrances to the freestanding emergency care facility may be locked, a duress alarm shall be provided.

(3) A video surveillance system shall be provided for each public entrance to the freestanding emergency care facility.

2.8-6.2.1.2 Primary entrance

(1) The emergency care facility entrance shall be illuminated and covered and have signage identifying the entrance.

(2) The primary entrance cover shall provide shelter extending at least over the passenger side of a vehicle.

2.8-6.2.1.3 Ambulance entrance

(1) A separate ambulance entrance shall be provided at grade level.

(2) The emergency vehicle entry cover shall provide shelter for both the patient and the emergency medical crew during transfer between an emergency vehicle and the building.

(3) Ambulance entrances shall provide a minimum of 6 feet (1.83 meters) in clear width to accommodate gurneys for individuals of size, mobile patient lift devices, and accompanying attendants.

2.8-6.2.2 Reception/Triage Area

A reception/triage area that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided based on the facility's service area needs and targeted population.

2.8-6.2.2.1 General

(1) The reception and triage area shall be located near both pedestrian and vehicular drop-off entrances.

(2) The reception/triage area shall be designed to allow staff to monitor entrances.

(3) Public access points to the treatment area shall be under direct observation of the reception and triage areas.

2.8-6.2.2.2 The triage area shall include the following:

(1) Access to language translation services

(2) Provisions for patient privacy~~. See~~ shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy) and Section 1.2-6.1.6 (Design Guidelines for Speech Privacy) ~~for requirements~~.

(3) Handwashing stations. Handwashing stations shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements) as amended here.

(a) A handwashing station shall be provided in each triage room.

(b) In triage areas, one handwashing station shall be provided for every four triage bays or cubicles.

(4) Hand sanitation dispensers. A hand sanitation dispenser shall be provided for each triage bay or cubicle.

(5) Access to a duress alarm for security emergencies

(6) Building system components

(a) Electrical outlets for equipment used in triage~~. For requirements, see~~ shall be provided in accordance with Table 2.1-1 (Electrical Receptacles for Patient Care Areas in Outpatient Facilities).

(b) Station outlets~~. For requirements, see~~ shall be provided in accordance with Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(c) Call devices~~. For requirements, see~~ shall be provided in accordance with Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

2.8-6.2.2.3 As the location of initial assessment for patients with undiagnosed and untreated airborne infections, the triage area shall be designed and ventilated to reduce the exposure of staff, patients, and families to airborne infectious diseases. See ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities* for requirements.

2.8-6.2.3 Public Waiting Area

A public waiting area with the following shall be provided:

2.8-6.2.3.1 Seating

2.8-6.2.3.2 Immediately accessible public toilet room(s) with handwashing station(s)

2.8-6.2.3.3 Access to drinking water

2.8-6.2.3.4 Access to public communications services

2.8-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas) with the amendments in this section.

2.8-6.3.1 Reserved

2.8-6.3.2 Interview Space

Space(s) shall be provided for the interview and intake process.

2.8-6.3.2.1 These areas shall provide speech and visual privacy.

2.8-6.3.2.2 These areas shall be permitted to be used as part of the triage process.

2.8-7 Design and Construction Requirements

The requirements in Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements) shall be met ~~for requirements~~.

2.8-8 Building Systems

~~See Section~~ Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) ~~for requirements~~.

2.9 Specific Requirements for Endoscopy Facilities

2.9-1 General

2.9-1.1 Application

2.9-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to outpatient facilities where endoscopy procedures are performed.

2.9-1.1.2 In addition to the requirements described in this chapter, the endoscopy facility shall meet the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.9-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to endoscopy facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.9-1.2 – 2.9-1.3 Reserved

2.9-1.4 Facility Layout ~~and Circulation~~

~~**2.9-1.4.1 Layout**~~

The endoscopy procedure suite shall be divided into the following major functional areas:

2.9-1.4.~~1.~~1 Procedure room(s)

2.9-1.4.~~1.~~2 Endoscope processing room(s)

2.9-1.4.~~1.~~3 Pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s)

~~**2.9-1.4.2 Circulation**~~

~~The endoscopy procedure suite shall be designed to facilitate movement of patients and personnel into, through, and out of defined areas in the suite.~~

2.9-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.9-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.9-3.1 Single-Patient Exam Room

Where an exam room is provided for examination of patients, medical consultation, and communication with patients and their families/legal guardians, it shall meet the requirements in sections 2.1-3.2.2.2 (2) (Single-patient exam/observation room—Space requirements) and 2.1-3.2.2.2 (3) (Room features). This room shall be permitted to serve multiple functions.

2.9-3.2 Endoscopy Procedure Room

The endoscopy procedure room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.3 (Procedure Room) with the amendments in this section.

2.9-3.2.1 Reserved

2.9-3.2.2 Space Requirements

2.9-3.2.2.1 Area. Each endoscopy procedure room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 180 square feet (16.72 square meters).

2.9-3.2.2.2 Clearances. Room arrangement shall permit the following minimum clearances around the gurney/table:

(1) 5 feet (1.52 meters) at each side

(2) 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 meters) at the head and foot

2.9-3.2.3 – 2.9-3.2.5 Reserved

2.9-3.2.6 Emergency Communication System

Emergency communication systems shall incorporate push activation of an emergency call switch.

2.9-3.3 Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care Areas

2.9-3.3.1 Pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.7 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) and the additional requirements in this section.

2.9-3.3.2 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s).

2.9-3.4 – 2.9-3.7 Reserved

2.9-3.8 Support Areas for the Endoscopy Procedure Area and Other Patient Care Areas

2.9-3.8.1 Reserved

2.9-3.8.2 Nurse or Control Station

2.9-3.8.2.1 A nurse or control station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) shall be provided.

2.9-3.8.2.2 The nurse or control station shall be located to permit visual observation of traffic entering the patient care and diagnostic areas.

2.9-3.8.3 – 2.9-3.8.7 Reserved

2.9-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

~~See~~ A medication safety zone shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) ~~for requirements~~.

2.9-3.8.9 – 2.9-3.8.11 Reserved

2.9-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

2.9-3.8.12.1 A soiled workroom or soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

2.9-3.8.12.2 The soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services in the same outpatient facility.

2.9-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.9-3.8.13.1 Reserved

2.9-3.8.13.2 General equipment and supply storage

(1) Storage room(s) shall be provided for storage of equipment and clean clinical supplies (including anesthesia equipment and supplies) used in the endoscopy procedure suite.

(2) At minimum, storage room(s) for equipment and clean clinical supplies shall have a combined floor area of 25 square feet (2.32 square meters) per procedure room.

~~**2.9-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair storage.** See Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Wheelchair storage and parking space) for requirements.~~

2.9-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.9-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Space for emergency resuscitation equipment and supplies shall be provided adjacent to the procedure room(s) and pre- and post-procedure patient care areas in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage).

2.9-3.8.13.5 Medical gas storage. Storage in accordance with NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*, including space for reserve cylinders, shall be provided for medical gas(es) used in the facility.

2.9-3.8.14 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-5.3.1.2 (Environmental services room for facility-based environmental services) shall be provided exclusively for the endoscopy procedure suite.

2.9-3.8.15 Fluid Waste Disposal Facilities

Fluid waste disposal facilities shall be located in the endoscopy facility.

2.9-3.8.15.1 In the procedure area, a clinical sink or equivalent equipment in a soiled workroom (see Section 2.9-3.8.12) shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.9-3.8.15.2 In the recovery area, a toilet equipped with a bedpan-rinsing device in the patient toilet room referred to in Section 2.9-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) or a separate clinical sink shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

2.9-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.9-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.9-3.9.1.1 A staff lounge shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.9.1 (Staff Lounge) in facilities with three or more procedure rooms.

2.9-3.9.1.2 These facilities shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services.

2.9-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

A staff toilet room shall be provided immediately accessible to the staff lounge.

2.9-3.9.3 Reserved

2.9-3.9.4 Staff Changing Area

2.9-3.9.4.1 A staff changing area with one or more private changing rooms or areas shall be provided for staff working in the endoscopy procedure suite.

2.9-3.9.4.2 Provision of a unisex locker area with one or more private changing rooms shall be permitted.

2.9-3.9.4.3 The staff changing area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.9.4 (Staff Changing Area).

2.9-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.9-3.10.1 Reserved

2.9-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.9-3.10.2.1 A patient toilet room(s) shall be readily accessible to procedure room(s) and pre- and post-procedure patient care area(s).

2.9-3.10.2.2 Patient toilet room(s) shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.9-3.10.3 Patient Changing Areas

An area shall be provided for patients to change from street clothing into patient gowns.

2.9-3.10.3.1 Patient changing shall be permitted to take place in the pre-procedure patient care area.

2.9-3.10.3.2 Provisions shall be made for securing patients' personal effects.

2.9-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.9-4.1 Laboratory Services

Laboratory spaces shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services).

2.9-4.2 Reserved

2.9-4.3 Endoscope Processing Room

Where endoscope processing is conducted in the endoscopy facility, an endoscope processing room(s) shall be provided as described in this section.

2.9-4.3.1 General

2.9-4.3.1.1 Where sterilization and endoscope processing will be conducted in the same space, requirements in Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) shall be met.

2.9-4.3.1.2 The endoscope processing room shall be permitted to serve multiple endoscopy procedure rooms as long as it is readily accessible to each procedure room.

2.9-4.3.1.3 The endoscope processing room shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area.

2.9-4.3.1.4 The endoscope processing room shall consist of a decontamination area and a clean work area.

2.9-4.3.1.5 Layout

(1) The endoscope processing room shall be designed to provide a one-way traffic pattern of contaminated materials/instruments to cleaned materials/instruments to the mechanical processor.

(2) Entrance to the decontamination area of the endoscope processing room from the procedure room shall be permitted.

(3) Exit from the clean work area of the endoscope processing room into the procedure room shall be permitted.

(4) To avoid cross-contamination, the decontamination area shall be separated from the clean work area by either of the following:

(a) A 4-foot (1.22-meter) distance from the edge of the sink

(b) A separating wall or screen. Where a screen is used, it shall extend a minimum of 4 feet (1.22 meters) above the sink rim.

2.9-4.3.2 Decontamination Area

2.9-4.3.2.1 The decontamination area shall be sized to accommodate the space needed for the equipment used.

2.9-4.3.2.2 The decontamination area shall contain the following:

(1) Work counter

(2) Handwashing station

(3) Utility sink(s) with a minimum diagonal dimension of 24 inches (60.96 centimeters)

(a) A two-basin sink(s) with a backsplash at least 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) high shall be provided.

(b) A single-basin sink with a backsplash at least 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) high shall be permitted where alternative methods for leak testing and pre-cleaning are provided.

(4) Eyewash station~~. See~~ Eyewash stations shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-8.4.3.8 (Emergency first-aid equipment) ~~for requirements~~.

(5) Instrument air outlet or space for portable compressed air where required by the equipment used. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

(6) Storage for decontamination supplies and personal protective equipment (PPE)

2.9-4.3.3 Clean Work Area

2.9-4.3.3.1 The clean work area shall be sized to accommodate the minimum equipment space and clearances described in equipment manufacturers' guidelines.

2.9-4.3.3.2 The clean work area shall be equipped with the following:

(1) Countertop with space for equipment used

(2) Storage for supplies

(3) Instrument air outlet or space for portable compressed air where required by the equipment used. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities).

2.9-4.3.3.3 Where an automated endoscope reprocessor (AER) is used, space and utility connections shall be provided for the equipment as described in the manufacturer's guidelines.

2.9-4.3.3.4 Storage for clean endoscopes

(1) Provisions for clean endoscope storage shall be provided in the clean work area or outside but adjacent to the procedure room.

(2) Where storage for endoscopes is provided in the clean work area of the endoscope processing room, it shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Storage shall be a cabinet(s) with doors.

(b) The cabinet(s) must be at least 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) from any sink.

(c) The cabinet(s) shall be located so staff do not have to cross through the decontamination area to access the clean scopes.

2.9-5 Building Support Facilities

2.9-5.1 Reserved

2.9-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) for requirements.

2.9-5.3 Environmental Services

2.9-5.3.1 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.9-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.9-6.1 Reserved

2.9-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.9-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.9-6.3.1 Reserved

2.9-6.3.2 Interview Space

2.9-6.3.2.1 Interview space(s) for private interviews shall be provided.

2.9-6.3.2.2 Use of the room required under Section 2.9-6.3.4 (Multipurpose Room) as interview space shall be permitted.

2.9-6.3.3 Offices

At minimum, designated office space for general and individual office(s) shall be provided.

2.9-6.3.4 Multipurpose Room

At least one private multipurpose or consultation room shall be provided.

2.9-6.3.5 Medical Records

See Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records) for requirements.

2.9-6.4 Support Areas for Staff

2.9-6.4.1 Staff Storage Facilities

Special storage, including locking drawers and/or cabinets, for the personal effects of administrative staff shall be provided.

2.9-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.9-7.1 Reserved

2.9-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

2.9-7.2.1 Reserved

2.9-7.2.2 Architectural Details

2.9-7.2.2.1 Corridor width. The required minimum corridor width shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.1 (Corridor width).

2.9-7.2.2.2 Reserved

2.9-7.2.2.3 Door openings. Door openings shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (2) (Door openings).

2.9-7.2.3 Surfaces

Floor, wall, and ceiling finishes in the endoscopy procedure suite shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.3 (Surfaces).

2.9-7.2.4 Furnishings

2.9-7.2.4.1 Reserved

2.9-7.2.4.2 Countertops and casework in ~~instrument~~ endoscope processing rooms

(1) All countertops and casework in the ~~instrument~~ endoscope processing room shall be made of materials that are impervious to staining and cleaning chemicals.

(2) Backsplashes shall be at least 12 inches (30.48 centimeters) high.

2.9-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems).

~~**2.9-8.1 Reserved**~~

~~**2.9-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~**2.9-8.4.1 General**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.4.2 Gas and Vacuum Requirements**~~

~~See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.6 Fire Alarm System**~~

~~Where a manually operated, electrically supervised fire alarm system is installed in the facility, see Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System) for requirements.~~

~~**2.9-8.7 Elevators**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.7 (Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

2.10 Specific Requirements for Renal Dialysis Centers

2.10-1 General

2.10-1.1 Application

2.10-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to renal dialysis centers that treat patients with chronic renal disease.

2.10-1.1.2 The renal dialysis center shall meet the requirements in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.10-1.1.3 Requirements set forth in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to renal dialysis centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.10-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~Where accommodations for care of individuals of size are provided, see Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.10-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.10-3.1 Exam Room

Where an exam room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2.2 (Single-patient exam/observation room).

2.10-3.2 Hemodialysis Treatment Area

2.10-3.2.1 General

2.10-3.2.1.1 The treatment area shall be permitted to be an open-plan area.

2.10-3.2.1.2 The treatment area shall be separate from administrative and waiting areas.

2.10-3.2.1.3 Patient scale

(1) Dedicated space shall be provided for a patient scale.

(2) Where other provisions are made for weighing patients, omission of this dedicated space shall be permitted.

2.10-3.2.2 Hemodialysis Patient Care Stations

2.10-3.2.2.1 General. Built-in cabinetry and casework for other than concealment of infrastructure (e.g., piping, cables) shall not be permitted in the patient care station.

2.10-3.2.2.2 Space requirements. The following minimum clearances shall be provided:

(1) 4 feet (1.22 meters) between the sides of gurneys/dialysis chairs

(2) 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides of gurneys/dialysis chairs and adjacent walls or partitions

(3) 2 feet (60.96 centimeters) at the foot of a gurney/dialysis chair in its fully open position

2.10-3.2.2.3 Treated water outlet. See Section 2.10-8.4.1.2 (2) (Hemodialysis water distribution—Treated water distribution system).

2.10-3.2.3 Reserved

2.10-3.2.4 Patient Privacy

~~The treatment area shall accommodate provisions for visual privacy.~~ The treatment area shall accommodate provisions for privacy in accordance with ~~See~~ Section 2.1-3.1.2 (Patient Privacy).

2.10-3.2.5 Handwashing Stations

2.10-3.2.5.1 A handwashing station shall be located at each patient entry to the hemodialysis treatment area. This handwashing station shall be permitted to contribute to the total number of handwashing stations required.

2.10-3.2.5.2 Handwashing stations shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.10-3.2.6 Fluid Disposal Sink

2.10-3.2.6.1 At least one dedicated sink shall be provided in the treatment area for fluid waste disposal.

2.10-3.2.6.2 The sink shall be deep enough to avoid potential splash of biological waste and cross-contamination to areas with stored or prepared clean items

2.10-3.2.6.3 The sink shall be located to prevent cross-contamination of handwashing stations as determined by an infection control risk assessment.

2.10-3.2.6.4 The fluid disposal sink shall have non-sensor-operated hands-free faucets or fittings.

2.10-3.3 Home Training Patient Care Room/Area

2.10-3.3.1 Where patients are trained to use dialysis equipment at home, a patient care room/area ~~private room~~ of at least 110 ~~120~~ square feet (10.22 ~~11.15~~ square meters) shall be provided.

~~**2.10-3.3.2** This room shall be designed to mimic a residential environment and contain the following:~~

2.10-3.3.2 Each home training patient care room/area shall contain the following:

2.10-3.3.2.1 Counter

2.10-3.3.2.2 Handwashing station. A minimum of one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patients when the patient care area is not a private room.

2.10-3.3.2.3 ~~Fluid disposal fixture.~~ Flushing rim fixture for fluid disposal. A tankless flush-valve toilet, residential-style tank toilet, or clinical service sink/hopper shall be permitted to serve this function.

2.10-3.4 Special Patient Care Rooms

2.10-3.4.1 Dedicated Hemodialysis Room for Patients with Special Precaution Needs

A room that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided to prevent contact transmission of infectious microorganisms (e.g., Hepatitis B).

2.10-3.4.1.1 General

(1) This dedicated room shall be a single-patient room.

(2) The room shall allow for direct staff observation of the patient's face and vascular access during treatment.

2.10-3.4.1.2 Room requirements

(1) Space requirements. This dedicated room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters).

(2) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be located in each dedicated room.

(3) Fluid disposal sink. A fluid disposal sink that meets the requirements in Section 2.10-3.2.6 (Fluid Disposal Sink) shall be provided in the room.

(4) Storage. Personal protective equipment (PPE) storage shall be provided in accordance with the health care organization's infection control risk assessment (ICRA).

2.10-3.4.1.3 Architectural details. A door and walls shall be provided that extend to the floor, but not necessarily to the ceiling, and allow for visual monitoring of the patient.

2.10-3.5 – 2.10-3.7 Reserved

2.10-3.8 Support Areas for the Renal Dialysis Center

2.10-3.8.1 Reserved

2.10-3.8.2 Nurse Station

2.10-3.8.2.1 A nurse station that meets the requirements of Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) shall be located in the dialysis treatment area.

2.10-3.8.2.2 The nurse station shall be designed so that each dialysis patient care station is visible from at least one nurse station location.

(1) Visual observation shall include direct observation of the patient's face and vascular access.

(2) Casework and fixed obstructions in the hemodialysis treatment area shall be no higher than 3 feet 8 inches (1.12 meters) in sight lines that would impair visual observation of patient care stations.

2.10-3.8.2.3 Location of a handwashing station at the nurse station shall be permitted.

2.10-3.8.3 – 2.10-3.8.7 Reserved

2.10-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

2.10-3.8.8.1 See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

2.10-3.8.8.2 A dedicated medication safety zone shall be centrally located in the dialysis center.

2.10-3.8.8.3 Where the medication safety zone is located in an open-plan area, it shall be located at least 6 feet (1.83 meters) from any individual gurney/dialysis chair.

2.10-3.8.9 Nourishment Area

Where a nourishment area for the dialysis service is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room).

2.10-3.8.10 Reserved

2.10-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

A clean workroom and/or clean supply room or area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.10-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.10-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.10-3.8.13.1 Clean linen storage. Where blankets or other linens are used, a clean linen storage area shall be provided.

(1) A covered cart or a closet for linen storage shall be permitted to meet this requirement.

(2) Where a covered cart is used, cart storage space shall be provided out of the path of normal traffic ~~and under staff control~~.

2.10-3.8.13.2 Clinical equipment and supply storage. Storage areas or space for supply carts shall be provided.

2.10-3.8.13.3 Storage space for wheelchairs and motorized chairs

~~(1) Wheelchair storage space shall be provided as indicated in Section 2.1-6.2.6 (Wheelchair storage and parking space).~~

(1) Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking) as amended below.

(2) A minimum of one wheelchair storage or parking space shall be provided for every four patient care stations, with at least one storage or parking space provided where there are fewer than four patient care stations.

2.10-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. Space for emergency equipment and supplies shall be provided adjacent to the hemodialysis treatment area.

2.10-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

Support areas for staff shall include the following:

2.10-3.9.1 Lockers

2.10-3.9.2 A staff toilet room with handwashing station

2.10-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.10-3.10.1 Reserved

2.10-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

A patient toilet room with handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the treatment area described in Section 2.10-3.2 (Hemodialysis Treatment Area).

2.10-3.10.2.1 The patient toilet room shall be equipped with a nurse call device. See Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

2.10-3.10.2.2 Toilet room doors. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.3 (5) (Doors for patient toilet rooms) for requirements.

2.10-3.10.3 Storage for Patient Belongings

Storage for patients' belongings shall be provided.

2.10-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.10-4.1 – 2.10-4.4 Reserved

2.10-4.5 Dialysis Support Facilities

~~**2.10-4.5.1 Dialyzer Reprocessing Room**~~

~~Where dialyzers are processed on-site for reuse, a reprocessing room shall be provided.~~

~~**2.10-4.5.1.1 Layout.** The dialyzer reprocessing room design shall provide for a one-way flow of materials from soiled to clean.~~

~~**2.10-4.5.1.2 Room features.** The dialyzer reprocessing room shall have the following:~~

~~(1) Refrigeration for temporary storage of dialyzers~~

~~(2) Decontamination/cleaning areas~~

~~(3) Handwashing station~~

~~(4) Processors~~

~~(5) Computer processors and label printers~~

~~(6) Packaging area~~

~~(7) Dialyzer storage cabinets~~

2.10-4.5.1~~2~~ Dialysate Preparation Area

2.10-4.5.1~~2~~.1 Where dialysate preparation is conducted on-site, a dialysate preparation area shall be provided.

2.10-4.5.1~~2~~.2 This area shall include the following:

(1) Handwashing station

(2) Storage space

(3) Work counter for mixing and distribution equipment

(4) Floor drain

(5) Treated water outlet. See Section 2.10-8.4.1.2 (2) (Hemodialysis water distribution—Treated water distribution system).

2.10-4.5.2~~1~~ Equipment ~~Repair~~ Maintenance Room

2.10-4.5.2~~1~~.1 An equipment ~~repair~~ maintenance and breakdown room shall be provided.

2.10-4.5.2~~1~~.2 The equipment ~~repair~~ maintenance room shall be equipped with the following:

(1) Handwashing station

(2) Treated water outlet for equipment maintenance. See Section 2.10-8.4.1.2 (2) (Hemodialysis water distribution—Treated water distribution system).

(3) Drain or sink for equipment connection and testing

(4) Work counter

(5) Storage cabinet

2.10-4.5.3~~4~~ Emergency First-Aid Equipment

See Section 2.1-8.4.3.8 (Emergency first-aid equipment) for requirements.

2.10-5 Building Support Facilities

2.10-5.1 Reserved

2.10-5.2 Waste Management

2.10-5.2.1 Waste Collection and Storage Facilities

2.10-5.2.1.1 Waste collection and storage facilities that meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management) and the requirement in this section shall be provided.

2.10-5.2.1.2 A handwashing station or hand sanitation dispenser shall be provided immediately accessible to biohazardous waste storage areas.

2.10-5.3 Environmental Services

An environmental services room for the exclusive use of the dialysis center shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.10-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.10-6.1 Reserved

2.10-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.10-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.10-6.3.1 – 2.10-6.3.2 Reserved

2.10-6.3.3 General or Individual Office Space

Office workspace shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3.3 (General or Individual Office Space).

2.10-6.3.4 Reserved

2.10-6.3.5 Medical Records

See Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records) for requirements.

2.10-7 Design and Construction

2.10-7.1 The requirements in Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements) shall be met.

2.10-7.2 Path of Travel

At least one path of travel that serves the dialysis facility shall be sized to accommodate the passage of emergency medical personnel who are transporting a patient by gurney or stretcher.

2.10-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) in addition to the requirements in this section.

2.10-8.1 – 2.10-8.3 Reserved

~~**2.10-8.1 Reserved**~~

~~**2.10-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems**~~

~~For HVAC system requirements, see Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems).~~

~~**2.10-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) for requirements.~~

2.10-8.4 Plumbing Systems

~~For plumbing system requirements, see Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) and additional requirements in this section.~~

~~**2.10-8.4.1 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems**~~

~~**2.10-8.4.1.1 Reserved**~~

2.10-8.4.1~~.2~~ Hemodialysis Water Distribution

Hemodialysis water distribution shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.10 (Water treatment purification systems, equipment, and distribution) in addition to the following requirements:

2.10-8.4.1.1 All hemodialysis water treatment and purification equipment shall be of materials and construction in accordance with ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: *Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies.*

2.10-8.4.1.2 Treated water for hemodialysis shall comply with the requirements of *ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-3: Water for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies*.

~~(1) The following shall be provided:~~

~~(a) Separate treated water distribution system~~

~~(b) Drainage system independent from the tap water~~

~~(2) Treated water distribution system. This system shall meet the following requirements:~~

~~(a) The treated water system shall be in accordance with:~~

~~(i) ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: *Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies*~~

~~(ii) ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-3: *Water for Haemodialysis and Related Therapies*~~

2.10-8.4.1.3 ~~(b)~~ Treated water distribution outlets shall be provided for these areas:

(1) ~~(i)~~ Each individual hemodialysis patient care station

(2) ~~(ii)~~ Hemodialysis equipment repair area

(3) ~~(iii)~~ Dialysate preparation area

2.10-8.4.1.4 ~~(3)~~ Dialysis equipment or water system components shall meet FDA 510 (k) approval and the requirements of Class 2 medical devices.

2.10-8.4.1.5 ~~(4)~~ The liquid waste and disposal system for the hemodialysis treatment area shall be designed to minimize odor and prevent backflow.

2.10-8.4.1.6 ~~(5)~~ All hemodialysis distribution piping shall be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance.

~~**2.10-8.4.2 Hemodialysis Water Treatment Equipment Area**~~

~~**2.10-8.4.2.1** Water treatment purification equipment shall be located in a dedicated area with space to access all components of the equipment.~~

~~(1) This area shall include a drain.~~

~~(2) This area shall be located in a secured space or room.~~

~~**2.10-8.4.2.2** All hemodialysis water treatment and purification equipment shall be of materials and construction in accordance with ANSI/AAMI/ISO 23500-2: *Water Treatment Equipment for Haemodialysis Applications and Related Therapies*.~~

~~**2.10-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.10-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System) for requirements.~~

~~**2.10-8.7 Elevators**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.7 (Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: Blue text and ~~red strike-throughs~~ indicate accepted revisions for the 2026 draft document, available now for public comment. Some section numbers have changed editorially to align with sections is the *new chapter* (chapter 2.12) for behavioral health crisis centers.

2.11 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Facilities

2.11-1 General

2.11-1.1 Application

2.11-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to outpatient facilities that provide community outpatient behavioral and mental health services.

2.11-1.1.2 Outpatient behavioral health crisis centers shall meet the requirements in chapter 2.12, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral Health Crisis Centers.

2.11-1.1.3 The outpatient behavioral and mental health facility shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.11-1.1.4 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to outpatient behavioral and mental health facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

~~**2.11-1.1.4** The requirements in this chapter are not intended to inhibit placement of small neighborhood outpatient behavioral and mental health centers (i.e., facilities with four or fewer employees) into existing commercial and residential facilities.~~

2.11-1.2 Reserved

2.11-1.3 Environment of Care

2.11-1.3.1 Environmental Safety and Prevention of Harm

The level of safety and security required to protect patients, staff, and visitors shall be set by the governing body and correlate to the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6).

2.11-1.3.2 Observation in the Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Facility

2.11-1.3.2.1 Means of observation by staff of all public areas, including building entry areas, lobbies, waiting areas, and corridors, shall be provided.

2.11-1.3.2.2 Camera surveillance shall be permitted where direct visibility from the care team station is impeded.

~~**2.11-1.2.3** Hidden areas in corridors shall be prohibited.~~

2.11-1.3.3 ~~**2.11-2.1.3 Staff**~~ **Safety Features**

Where the need is indicated by the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6, Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) or requirements in this chapter, the following shall be provided in behavioral

and mental health provider/counselor offices, consultation rooms, group rooms, interview rooms, unsecured nurse/staff stations, and other locations where staff and patients interact:

2.11-1.3.3.1 ~~**2.11-2.1.3.1**~~ Space for a clear path of escape for staff and/or other patients

2.11-1.3.3.2 ~~**2.11-2.1.3.2**~~ A staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally, or another entity externally, when assistance is needed

2.11-1.3.3.3 If determined by the safety risk assessment, room and/or area components shall have safety features for tamper- and ligature- resistance, or components shall be secured to limit access.

2.11-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

2.11-3 Areas for Patient Services

2.11-3.1 Reserved

2.11-3.2 Exam Room

Where an exam room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms) as amended in this section.

2.11-3.2.1 If determined by the safety risk assessment, handwashing sinks, electrical outlets, and similar features shall have safety features for tamper- and ligature- resistance, or those elements are secured to prevent access.

2.11-3.2.2 Each exam room shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally or another entity externally.

2.11-3.3 Observation Room

~~Where an observation room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).~~

2.11-3.3.1 Number

The number of observation rooms or areas shall be determined by the health care organization during the planning phase.

2.11-3.3.2 Space Requirements

2.11-3.3.2.1 Space requirements for single-patient observation rooms

(1) Area. Each single-patient observation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters).

(2) Clearances

(a) Room size shall permit a room arrangement with a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on each side and at the foot of the exam table, bed, recliner, or chair.

(b) A room arrangement in which an exam table, bed, recliner, or chair is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served shall be permitted.

2.11-3.3.2.2 Space requirements for multiple-patient observation areas

(1) Area. The multiple-patient observation area shall have a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient.

(2) Clearances

(a) A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided between recliners.

(b) A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between walls or partitions and the sides of recliners.

2.11-3.3.3 Handwashing Station

A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.11-3.3.4 Patient Toilet Room Serving the Observation Room or Area

2.11-3.3.4.1 Number

(1) Single patient observation room. At least one toilet room shall be provided for each six single-patient observation rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

(2) Multiple-patient observation area. At least one toilet room shall be provided for each eight observation rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

2.11-3.3.4.2 Patient toilet room ligature-resistant design features

Patient toilet room(s) serving the observation room or area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

2.11-3.3.5 Patient Shower Room Serving the Observation Room or Area

Where patient shower rooms are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.11-3.3.5.1 Where patient shower rooms are required by the safety risk assessment to have ligature-resistant design features, they shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features) in addition to the following requirement:

2.11-3.3.5.2 Shower curtain rods shall not be permitted.

2.11-3.4 Reserved [Section number reserved to preserve alignment with new chapter 2.12]

2.11-3.5 Calming/Comfort Room ~~Quiet Room~~

Where a calming/comfort room ~~quiet room~~ is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.11-3.5.1 Space requirements

The calming/comfort room ~~quiet room~~ shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.11-3.5.2 Toilet Room

2.11-3.5.2.1 A toilet room shall be adjacent to the calming/comfort room ~~quiet room~~.

2.11-3.5.2.2 This toilet room shall be permitted to be shared by patients using other activity spaces.

2.11-3.5.3 Door

The door to the quiet room shall have a vision panel. [Relocated from Section 2.11-3.11.2 (3) (IOP/PHP—Calming/comfort room)]

2.11-3.6 Reserved [Section number reserved to preserve alignment with new chapter 2.12]

2.11-3.7 Seclusion Room

Where the behavioral and mental health risk assessment indicates the need for a seclusion room in the outpatient behavioral and mental health facility, a room that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided.

2.11-3.7.1 General

2.11-3.7.1.1 Capacity. Each room shall be designed for single occupancy.

2.11-3.7.1.2 Location

(1) The room shall be located to permit direct observation from outside the room.

(2) Where more than one is provided, seclusion rooms shall be permitted to be grouped together.

2.11-3.7.2 Space Requirements

(1) Seclusion rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) ~~and a maximum wall length of 12 feet (3.66 meters)~~.

(2) Where a room for restraining patients is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.11-3.7.3 – 2.11-3.7.4 Reserved

2.11-3.7.5 Special Design Elements

2.11-3.7.5.1 General

(1) Seclusion rooms shall be designed and constructed to avoid features that enable patient hiding, escape, injury, or self-harm.

(2) Seclusion rooms shall have ligature-resistant design features that meet the requirements in Section 2.11-7.2.1 (Tamper and Ligature Resistance and Suicide Prevention).

2.11-3.7.5.2 Architectural details

(1) The walls, ceiling, and floor of the seclusion room shall be designed to withstand direct and forceful impact.

(2) Seclusion rooms shall not contain sharp corners or edges.

(3) Minimum ceiling height shall be 9 feet (2.74 meters).

(4) Doors

(a) Door openings shall have a minimum clear width of 44 inches (1.12 meters).

(b) The entrance door to the seclusion room shall swing out.

(c) Doors shall permit staff observation of the patient through a view panel, while also maintaining provisions for patient privacy. The view panel shall be fixed glazing with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing.

2.11-3.7.5.3 Building systems

(1) All items in the room, including but not limited to lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads, HVAC grilles, and surveillance cameras, shall be tamper-resistant and designed to prevent injury to the patient.

(2) Electrical switches and receptacles are prohibited in the seclusion room.

2.11-3.8 Consultation Room

Where a consultation room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.11-3.8.1 Space Requirements

A minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) shall be provided.

2.11-3.8.2 Patient Privacy

2.11-3.8.2.1 The room shall be designed for acoustic privacy as indicated in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).

2.11-3.8.2.2 The room shall provide for visual privacy.

2.11-3.8.2 Staff Assist Device

Each consultation room shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally or another entity externally.

2.11-3.9 Group Room

Where a group room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.11-3.9.1 Space Requirements

2.11-3.9.1.1 Size and dimensions of group rooms shall accommodate the number of seats expected in the most likely configuration for the most frequent number of occupants.

2.11-3.9.1.2 Rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 105 square feet (9.75 square meters) plus additional increments of 15 square feet (1.39 square meters) per person beyond five people.

2.11-3.9.2 Staff Assist Device

Each group room shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally, or another entity externally~~, when assistance is needed~~.

2.11-3.9.3 Door

At least one door into a group room shall swing out or be double-acting.

2.11-3.10 Specialty Therapy Locations

2.11-3.10.1 Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation (TMS) Room

Where a TMS room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.11-3.10.1.1 Space requirements. The TMS room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.11-3.10.1.2 Documentation area. Accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

2.11-3.10.1.3 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in the TMS room in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.11-3.10.2 Electroconvulsive Therapy Facilities

2.11-3.10.2.1 General

(1) Application

(a) Where electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is provided in the facility, the requirements in this section shall be met.

(b) Provision of ECT services shall be permitted in a procedure room or an operating room in a medical office setting or an outpatient surgery facility where the procedure room or operating room meets the requirements in this section. See sections 2.1-3.2.3 (Procedure Room) and 2.1-3.2.4 (Operating Rooms) for requirements.

(2) Size, location, and layout. The size, location, and configuration of the ECT treatment, recovery, and support areas shall reflect the type of patients to be treated and the projected volume of patients.

2.11-3.10.2.2 ECT treatment area

(1) The ECT treatment area shall be permitted to be a single treatment room or a suite of rooms.

(2) ECT treatment room

(a) Space requirements. Each ECT treatment room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 14 feet (4.27 meters).

(b) Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

(c) Documentation area. Accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

2.11-3.10.2.3 Pre- and post-treatment patient care areas. Where ECT services have low-volume throughput, use of the ECT treatment room for pre-treatment patient care and post-treatment recovery shall be permitted.

(1) Pre-treatment patient care area

(a) Where a pre-treatment patient care area is provided, ~~the number and size of~~ a minimum of one patient care station shall be provided.

(b) Additional patient care stations shall be determined by the following:

(i) Number of ECT treatments performed

(ii) Anticipated staffing levels

(2) Recovery area

(a) Where a Phase II recovery area is provided, ~~the number and size of~~ a minimum of one Phase II patient care station shall be provided.

(b) The pre-treatment patient care station shall be permitted to serve as the Phase II recovery station.

(c) Additional patient care stations shall be determined by the following:

(i) Number of ECT treatments performed

(ii) Types of anesthesia used

(iii) Average recovery periods

(iv) Anticipated staffing levels

(3) Space requirements. When determining the area for a pre-treatment or recovery area patient care station, see Section 2.1-3.7.2 (Patient Care Station Design) for requirements.

(4) Handwashing station(s). Where a pre-treatment or recovery area is provided, see Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) for handwashing station requirements.

2.11-3.10.2.4 – 2.11-3.10.2.7 Reserved

2.11-3.10.2.8 Support areas for ECT treatment and pre- and post-patient care areas. Where it is not feasible to share these support areas with other clinical services in the behavioral and mental health facility, the following shall be provided in the ECT treatment area:

(1) Nurse Station. See Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) for requirements.

(2) Medication Safety Zone. Where medication is prepared or dispensed in the ECT treatment area, see Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

(3) Emergency equipment storage

(a) Space shall be provided in the ECT treatment area for storage of emergency equipment such as a CPR cart. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage) for requirements.

(b) This emergency equipment storage space shall be permitted to serve more than one ECT treatment room.

2.11-3.10.2.9 Reserved

2.11-3.10.2.10 Patient support areas. ~~Where waiting areas and patient toilet rooms are provided, their number and size shall be determined by the following:~~

(1) A minimum of one patient toilet room shall be separate from public use toilet rooms and located to permit access from pre- and post- patient care areas without passing through publicly accessible areas. See Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) for requirements.

(2) Additional patient toilet rooms shall be determined by the following:

(a) Number of ECT treatments performed

(b) Average recovery periods

(c) Anticipated staffing levels

(3) Provisions shall be made for securing patients' personal effects during ECT treatments.

2.11-3.10.2.11 Special design elements for ECT treatment and recovery areas

(1) HVAC system. See Table 8-2 (Design Parameters—General Outpatient Spaces) in Part 3 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*) for ventilation requirements for an ECT treatment room.

(2) Electrical systems. An emergency electrical source shall be provided in the ECT treatment room and in the recovery area, where one is provided.

(3) Medical gas.

~~(i)~~ See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for station outlet requirements.

~~(ii) All medical gases used shall meet the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code*.~~

(4) Communication systems

(a) Nurse call devices shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in Table 2.1-3 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Outpatient Facilities).

(b) The nurse call system and call devices shall be tamper- and ligature-resistant.

2.11-3.11 Intensive Outpatient and Partial Hospitalization Program (IOP/PHP) Facilities

Where IOP/PHP treatment is provided in the behavioral and mental health facility, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.11-3.11.1 Reserved

2.11-3.11.2 IOP/PHP Treatment Areas

2.11-3.11.2.1 Calming/comfort room ~~Quiet room.~~

(1) Where required as part of the IOP/PHP treatment program, a calming/comfort room ~~quiet room~~ that meets the requirements in Section 2.11-3.5 (Calming/comfort room~~Quiet Room~~) shall be provided as amended below.

~~(1) The quiet room shall be located to permit direct observation from outside the room.~~

(2) The calming/comfort room ~~quiet room~~ shall be immediately accessible to the nurse station.

~~(3) The door to the quiet room shall have a vision panel.~~ [Relocated to Section 2.11-3.5.3 (Calming/Comfort Room)]

2.11-3.11.2.2 Group therapy room for IOP/PHP. One group therapy room that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided to accommodate 12 occupants (staff and patients). Where the IOP/PHP treatment program has fewer than 12 participants, this room shall be permitted to also serve as the activity room.

(1) The group therapy room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 225 square feet (20.90 square meters).

(2) Where a swinging door is used, it shall swing outward or be double-acting.

(3) The door to the group therapy room shall have a vision panel.

2.11-3.11.2.3 Activity room for IOP/PHP. A room(s) to accommodate music and/or art therapy, yoga, or other activities shall be provided.

(1) The activity room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 225 square feet (20.90 square meters).

(2) An immediately accessible utility sink and countertop area for cleaning and drying art supplies shall be provided.

2.11-3.11.2.4 Counseling or consultation room for IOP/PHP. Where the IOP/PHP treatment program includes individual counseling and/or consultation, at least one counseling or consultation room that meets the requirements in Section 2.11-3.8 (Consultation Room) shall be provided. ~~shall be provided as amended in this section.~~

~~(1) The room shall be designed for acoustic privacy as indicated in Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms).~~

~~(2) The room shall provide for visual privacy.~~

2.11-3.11.2.5 Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) room. Where a TMS room is provided for the IOP/PHP program, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.11-3.2.9.1 (Transcranial magnetic stimulation room).

2.11-3.11.3 – 2.11-3.11.7 Reserved

2.11-3.11.8 Support Areas for IOP/PHP Treatment Areas

The support areas in this section shall be provided for the IOP/PHP treatment areas.

2.11-3.11.8.1 General. Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the behavioral and mental health facility shall be permitted.

2.11-3.11.8.2 Nurse station for IOP/PHP

(1) A nurse station for IOP/PHP staff work shall be provided if identified in the functional program.

(2) The nurse station shall have a duress alarm.

(3) Visual observation

(a) Visual observation of all traffic into the IOP/PHP treatment area shall be provided from the nurse station.

(b) Electronic means of visual observation shall be permitted when direct observation is impossible or impractical.

2.11-3.11.8.3 Documentation area for IOP/PHP. Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided.

2.11-3.11.8.4 – 2.11-3.11.8.7 Reserved

2.11-3.11.8.8 Medication safety zone for IOP/PHP. ~~See~~ Where medication is prepared or dispensed in the IOP/PHP program, see Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

2.11-3.11.8.9 Nourishment area for IOP/PHP. Use of one or a combination of the following shall be permitted to support food service for the IOP/PHP program:

(1) A nourishment station

(2) A kitchenette designed for patient use with staff control of ~~heating and cooking~~ reheating or warming devices

(3) A kitchen area with the following:

(a) Handwashing station

(b) Secured storage

(c) Refrigerator

2.11-3.11.8.10 – 2.11-3.11.8.12 Reserved

2.11-3.11.8.13 Equipment and supply storage for IOP/PHP

(1) Space shall be provided in the treatment area for storage of equipment (e.g., art equipment, musical instruments, yoga mats).

(2) This equipment storage space shall be permitted to serve more than one group therapy or activity room.

2.11-3.11.8.14 Environmental services room for IOP/PHP. An environmental services room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room) shall be provided.

2.11-3.11.9 Support Areas for IOP/PHP Staff

These staff facilities shall be permitted to be shared with other services in the behavioral and mental health facility.

2.11-3.11.9.1 IOP/PHP staff lounge. Staff lounge facilities shall be provided in the same building as the IOP/PHP program.

2.11-3.11.9.2 IOP/PHP staff toilet room. A staff toilet room(s) shall be immediately accessible to the IOP/PHP program nurse station.

2.11-3.11.9.3 Storage for IOP/PHP staff belongings. Securable closets or cabinet compartments for the personal effects of personnel shall be immediately accessible to the nurse station. At a minimum, these shall be large enough for purses and wallets.

2.11-3.11.10 Support Areas for IOP/PHP Patients

2.11-3.11.10.1 Reserved

2.11-3.11.10.2 IOP/PHP patient toilet rooms

(1) Toilet rooms shall be immediately accessible to the group therapy, activity, and counseling or consultation rooms.

(2) Toilet room door hardware shall meet the requirements in Section 2.11-7.2.2 (Door Hardware).

~~(2) Each toilet room shall contain a toilet and a handwashing station.~~

~~(3) Toilet room doors~~

~~(a) Doors with keyed locks that allow staff to control access to the toilet room shall be permitted. Where locks are used, they shall not inhibit an occupant from exiting the toilet room.~~

~~(b) Where a swinging door is used, the door to the toilet room shall swing outward or be double-acting.~~

~~(4) Where a toilet room is required to be ADA- or ANSI-compliant:~~

~~(a) Thresholds shall be designed to facilitate use and to prevent tipping of wheelchairs and other portable wheeled equipment by patients and staff.~~

~~(b) Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, grab bars shall be ligature resistant.~~

2.11-3.11.10.3 Storage for IOP/PHP patient belongings. Where indicated by the safety risk assessment, a locker for storing personal effects shall be provided for each patient.

2.11-3.12 Accommodations for Telemedicine Services

Where telemedicine services are provided in the outpatient behavioral and mental health facility, see Section 2.1-3.4 (Accommodations for Telemedicine Services) for requirements.

2.11-3.13 Support Areas for the Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Facility

2.11-3.13.1 Reserved

2.11-3.13.2 Nurse Station

Where a nurse station is provided, see Section 2.1-3.8.2 (Nurse Station) for requirements.

2.11-3.13.3 – 2.11-3.12.4 Reserved

2.11-3.13.5 Multipurpose Room

2.11-3.13.5.1 A multipurpose room(s) shall be provided for conferences, meetings, and health education. Use of a group room(s) for these purposes shall be permitted.

2.11-3.13.5.2 One multipurpose room shall be permitted to serve primarily for staff use, but it shall also be accessible to the public as needed.

2.11-3.13.6 – 2.11-3.13.7 Reserved

2.11-3.13.8 Medication Safety Zone

See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

2.11-3.13.9 Nourishment Area

2.11-3.13.9.1 See Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Room or Area) for requirements as amended below.

2.11-3.13.9.2 Location of a kitchenette(s) by the group or activity room(s) shall be permitted.

2.11-3.13.10 Reserved

~~**2.11-3.8.11 Clean Storage**~~

~~See Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room) for requirements for clean storage.~~

2.11-3.13.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

A clean workroom or clean supply room/area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.11-3.13.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom or soiled workroom shall be provided in accordance with ~~See~~ Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) ~~for requirements for soiled holding~~.

2.11-3.13.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.11-3.13.13.1 – 2.11-3.13.13.2 Reserved

~~**2.11-3.8.13.3** Wheelchair storage space shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Wheelchair storage and parking space).~~

2.11-3.13.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.11-3.14 Support Areas for Staff

2.11-3.14.1 Staff Lounge and Toilet Room

2.11-3.14.1.1 A staff lounge and toilet room shall be provided in addition to and separate from public and patient facilities.

2.11-3.14.1.2 These staff facilities shall be permitted to be shared with other clinic(s) in the same building.

2.11-3.15 Reserved

2.11-4 Reserved

2.11-5 Building Support Facilities

2.11-5.1 Reserved

2.11-5.2 Waste Management

See Section 2.1-5.2.1 (Waste Collection and Storage Facilities) for requirements.

2.11-5.3 Environmental Services

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.11-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

Where engineering services are provided, see Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services) for requirements.

2.11-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.11-6.1 Reserved

2.11-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas) and the requirements in this section.

2.11-6.2.1 Entrances

2.11-6.2.1.1 Entrances shall be secured where the behavioral and mental health facility is a stand-alone facility.

2.11-6.2.1.2 Where entrance lobby and/or elevators are shared with other tenants, travel to the outpatient behavioral and mental health facility shall be direct and accessible. Except for passage through common doors, lobbies, or elevator stations, patients shall not be required to go through other occupied areas or outpatient service areas.

2.11-6.2.2 Reception

2.11-6.2.2.1 A reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk(s) shall be provided in the behavioral and mental health facility.

2.11-6.2.2.2 The reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk(s) shall be immediately visible from the entrance to the behavioral and mental health facility.

2.11-6.2.2.3 The reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk shall be located to provide staff with visual observation of the entrance to the behavioral and mental health facility.

2.11-6.2.3 Waiting Area

2.11-6.2.3.1 The waiting area for patients and escorts shall be under direct visual control of the reception desk staff or monitored via electronic surveillance.

2.11-6.2.3.2 Where the outpatient behavioral and mental health facility has a dedicated pediatrics service, a separate, access-controlled waiting area for pediatric patients shall be provided.

2.11-6.3 Administrative Areas

Each outpatient behavioral and mental health ~~center~~ facility shall make provisions to support administrative activities, filing, and clerical work as appropriate. Administrative areas shall include the following:

2.11-6.3.1 Reserved

2.11-6.3.2 Interview Spaces

Space(s) for private interviews shall be separate from public and patient areas.

2.11-6.3.3 Office Space

2.11-6.3.3.1 Office(s), separate and enclosed, with provisions for privacy, shall be provided.

2.11-6.3.3.2 Clerical space or rooms for typing and clerical work shall be separated from public areas to assure confidentiality.

2.11-6.3.4 Reserved

2.11-6.3.5 Medical Records

For requirements regarding medical records, see Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records).

2.11-6.3.6 Office Supply Storage

Office supply storage (e.g., closets, cabinets) shall be provided.

2.11-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.11-7.1 Reserved

2.11-7.2 Architectural Details and Furnishings

The standards set forth in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) shall be met as amended in this section.

2.11-7.2.1 Tamper and Ligature Resistance and Suicide Prevention

~~**2.11-7.2.1.1**~~ Where the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment identifies suicide risk or staff safety concerns, architectural details, fixtures, and furnishings shall be tamper- and ligature-resistant in ~~patient treatment~~ high-risk areas.

~~**2.11-7.2.1.2** Cubicle curtains and draperies shall not be used where the safety risk assessment identifies them as a safety risk.~~

2.11-7.2.2 Door Hardware

2.11-7.2.2.1 Doors to patient toilet rooms in outpatient behavioral and mental health facilities shall swing outward or have hardware that is double-acting and allows staff to control access.

2.11-7.2.2.2 Doors in areas that are not continually supervised shall be equipped with a locking set of hardware to prevent access by patients.

2.11-7.2.2.3 For specific requirements for door hardware at toilet rooms, see Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.11-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) in addition to the requirements in this section.

2.11-8.1 Reserved

2.11-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

For behavioral and mental health exam room HVAC requirements, see Table 8-2 (Design Parameters—General Outpatient Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*.

2.11-8.3 – 2.11-8.5 Reserved

~~See Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.11-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.11-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.11-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

2.11-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

~~**2.11-8.6.1 Fire Alarm System**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System) for requirements.~~

2.11-8.6.1 Fire Protection System

Where the following fire protection system components will be accessible to patients, they shall be tamper- and impact-resistant and of a design to minimize ligature risks:

2.11-8.6.1.1 Fire extinguishers and cabinets

2.11-8.6.1.2 Fire alarm system devices

2.11-8.6.1.3 Fire sprinkler system components

2.11-8.6.1.4 Egress signage

2.11-8.6.2 Electronic Surveillance Systems

2.11-8.6.2.1 Where electronic surveillance systems are provided for the safety of patients, any devices in patient care areas shall be mounted in a tamper-resistant enclosure that is unobtrusive.

2.11-8.6.2.2 Electronic surveillance system monitoring display screens shall be located so images on the screen are not visible to unauthorized individuals.

2.11-8.6.2.3 If warranted by the safety risk assessment, electronic surveillance systems shall receive power from the essential electrical system or a backup power source in the event of a disruption of normal electrical power.

~~**2.11-8.7 Elevators**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.7 (Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: Requirements shown in black are existing 2022 requirements from the behavioral health crisis unit section of Chapter 2.8, *Specific Requirements for Freestanding Emergency Facilities*. This section has moved here (and has been renamed "freestanding emergency department behavioral health crisis center") to combine with a *new section* for community-based behavioral health crisis centers. Section numbers and headings have changed editorially. Blue text indicates accepted revisions for the 2026 draft document, available now for public comment.

2.12 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral Health Crisis Centers

2.12-1 General

2.12-1.1 Application

2.12-1.1.1 Freestanding Emergency Department Behavioral Health Crisis Center (BHCC)

Where referenced, this chapter shall apply to behavioral and mental health crisis centers that are part of a freestanding emergency care facility that is an emergency department physically separate from (i.e., not located on the same campus as) a hospital emergency department and is intended to provide emergency services 24 hours a day 7 days a week and receive patients arriving by ambulance.

2.12-1.1.2 Community-Based Behavioral Health Crisis Center (BHCC)

Where referenced, this chapter shall apply to community-based behavioral and mental health crisis centers providing treatment for patients experiencing behavioral health crisis who have been medically-cleared either prior to or upon arrival.

2.12-1.1.3 Other Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Facilities

For other outpatient facilities that provide behavioral and mental health services (not crisis centers), see Chapter 2.11, Specific Requirements for Outpatient Behavioral and Mental Health Facilities.

2.12-1.1.4 The outpatient behavioral and mental health crisis center shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.12-1.1.5 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to outpatient behavioral and mental health crisis centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.12-1.2 Shared Services for Freestanding Emergency Department BHCC

Sharing of clinical and ancillary services with other facilities in the freestanding emergency department shall be permitted when these shared services are located and configured to accommodate behavioral health programmatic requirements for safety, security, and other clinical considerations. See sections 1.2-4.6 (Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) and 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for additional requirements.

2.12-1.3 Environment of Care

2.12-1.3.1 Environmental Safety and Prevention of Harm

2.12-1.3.1.1 The level of safety and security required to protect patients, staff, and visitors shall be set by the governing body and correlate to the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment (see Section 1.2-4.6).

2.12-1.3.1.2 Consideration for harm prevention shall be given in designing architectural details and selecting surface materials and building system equipment. See Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) and Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) for requirements.

2.12-1.3.2 Observation in the Behavioral Health Crisis Center

2.12-1.3.2.1 ~~Means of observation of unit corridors and patient care areas shall be provided~~Means of observation by staff of public areas, including building entry areas, lobbies, waiting areas, and corridors shall be provided.

2.12-1.3.2.2 ~~Hidden alcoves and blind corners shall be avoided~~. Corridors located in the behavioral health crisis center shall be designed without hidden areas, alcoves, and blind corners that prevent staff observation of patient movement in the corridor.

2.12-1.3.2.3 ~~Electronic surveillance shall be permitted but shall not be the only means of visual observation.~~Where design features prevent visual observation of corridors,mirrors, cameras, or other provisions shall be permitted.

2.12-1.4 Environmental Safety and Security

The design shall provide the level of security needed for the specific type of service or program provided as well as for the age level, acuity, and risk of the patients served (e.g., geriatric, acute behavioral and mental health, or forensic for adult, child, and adolescent care). See sections 1.2-4.6 (Behavioral and Mental Health Risk Assessment) and 1.2-4.7 (Security Risk Assessment) for requirements.

2.12-1.4.1 Perimeter Security

Where provided, perimeter security shall meet the following requirements:

2.12-1.4.1.1 Perimeter security system design. A perimeter security system shall be designed to:

(1) Contain patients within the patient care unit until clinical staff and/or facility security can escort them to an adjacent compartment or an exit.

(2) Prevent elopement and contraband smuggling.

(3) Include provisions for monitoring and controlling visitor access and egress.

2.12-1.4.1.2 Openings in the perimeter security system. Openings in the perimeter security system (e.g., windows, doors, gates) shall be controlled by locks (manual, electric, or magnetic) where required by the security risk assessment.

2.12-1.4.2 Security Cameras and Other Security Measures

Use of security cameras and other security measures consistent with the security risk assessment shall be permitted.

2.12-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

2.12-3 Areas for Patient Services

The type of patient care areas provided shall be determined by the services provided and based on the safety risk assessment.

2.12-3.1 Intake Room or Area

An intake room or area shall be provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.1.1 Space Requirements for Intake Room or Area

The intake room or area shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet.

2.12-3.1.2 Space for Storage of Patients' Personal Property

A lockable storage room or locker shall be provided for the storage of patients' personal property.

2.12-3.1.3 Sharing of Space

The consultation room shall be permitted to serve as the intake room.

2.12-3.2 Exam/Treatment Room

2.12-3.2.1 Exam/Treatment Room for Freestanding Emergency Department BHCC

2.12-3.2.1.1 An exam/treatment room(s) shall be provided for medical assessment or triage of patients in the freestanding emergency department behavioral health crisis center.

2.12-3.2.1.2 Location of this room elsewhere in the emergency facility shall be permitted provided the room meets the requirements in Section 2.12-2 (Environment of care) and is immediately accessible to the freestanding emergency department behavioral health crisis center.

2.12-3.2.2 Exam/Treatment Room for Community-Based BHCC

Where an exam room is provided in the community-based behavioral health crisis center, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.2.2 (Exam Rooms) as amended in this section.

2.12-3.2.3 Staff Assist Device

Each exam room in the freestanding emergency room BHCC and the community-based BHCC shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally or another entity externally.

2.12-3.3 Observation Room or Area for Freestanding Emergency Department BHCC

Where observation rooms or areas are provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC, the requirements in this section shall be met. (For community-based BHCC central milieu room requirements, see Section 2.12-3.4 (Central Milieu Room for Community-Based BHCC).

2.12-3.3.1 Space Requirements

2.12-3.3.1.1 Space requirements for single-patient observation rooms

(1) Area. Each single-patient observation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters) with a minimum clear dimension of 10 feet (3.05 meters).

(2) Clearances

(a) Room size shall permit a room arrangement with a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) on each side and at the foot of the exam table, bed, recliner, or chair.

(b) A room arrangement in which an exam table, bed, recliner, or chair is placed at an angle, closer to one wall than another, or against a wall to accommodate the type of patient being served shall be permitted.

2.12-3.3.1.2 Space requirements for multiple-patient observation areas

(1) Area. The multiple-patient observation area shall have a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient.

(2) Clearances

(a) A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided between recliners.

(b) A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between walls or partitions and the sides of recliners.

2.12-3.3.2 Handwashing Station

A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.12-3.3.3 Patient Toilet Room Serving the Observation Room or Area

2.12-3.3.3.1 Number

(1) Single patient observation room.

(a) At least one toilet room shall be provided for each six single-patient observation rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

(b) This patient toilet room ratio shall not be required where each single-patient observation room has a directly accessible toilet room.

(2) Multiple-patient observation area. At least one toilet room shall be provided for each eight observation rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

2.12-3.3.3.2 Patient toilet room ligature-resistant design features. Patient toilet room(s) serving the observation room or area shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

2.12-3.3.4 Patient Shower Room Serving the Observation Room or Area

A minimum of one patient shower room shall be immediately accessible to the patient observation room or area.

2.12-3.3.4.1 Space requirements for the patient shower room

(1) Space for patient dressing shall be provided.

(2) Space to accommodate staff assistance shall be provided.

2.12-3.3.4.2 Sharing of space. Location of the shower in a patient toilet room shall be permitted.

2.12-3.3.4.3 Exception. A shower room shall not be required where each patient care station is a single-patient room directly accessible to a toilet room containing a shower that serves only the single-patient room.

2.12-3.4 Central Milieu Room for Community-Based BHCC

A central milieu room designed to facilitate socialization, discussion, interaction, and therapy shall be provided in the community-based BHCC. (For freestanding emergency department BHCC observation room requirements, see Section 2.12-3.3 (Observation Room or Area for Freestanding Emergency Department BHCC).

2.12-3.4.1 Space Requirements

2.12-3.4.1.1 Area. The central milieu room shall have a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters) per patient.

2.12-3.4.1.1 Clearances

(1) A minimum clearance of 4 feet (1.22 meters) shall be provided between recliners.

(2) A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between walls or partitions and the sides of recliners.

2.12-3.4.2 Handwashing Station

A handwashing station shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.12-3.4.3 Patient Toilet Room Serving the Central Milieu Room

2.12-3.4.3.1 Number. At least one toilet room shall be provided for each eight patients and for each major fraction thereof.

2.12-3.4.3.2 Patient toilet room ligature-resistant design features. Patient toilet room(s) serving the central milieu room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Patient Toilet Room—Ligature-resistant design features).

2.12-3.4.4 Patient Shower Room Serving the Central Milieu Room

A minimum of one patient shower room shall be immediately accessible to the central milieu room.

2.12-3.4.4.1 Space requirements for the patient shower room

(1) Space for patient dressing shall be provided.

(2) Space to accommodate staff assistance shall be provided.

2.12-3.4.4.2 Sharing of space. Location of the shower in a patient toilet room shall be permitted.

2.12-3.5 ~~Quiet~~ Calming/Comfort Room

A ~~quiet~~ calming/comfort room shall be provided in both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC for a patient who needs to be alone for a short period but does not require a seclusion room or secure holding room.

2.12-3.5.1 Space Requirement for Calming/Comfort Room

The ~~quiet~~ calming/comfort room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.12-3.5.2 Sharing of Space

The ~~quiet~~ calming/comfort room shall be permitted to serve as a consultation room.

2.12-3.5.3 Patient Toilet Room Serving the Calming/Comfort Room

2.12-3.5.3.1 A toilet room shall be adjacent to the calming/comfort room.

2.12-3.5.3.2 This toilet room shall be permitted to be shared by patients using other activity spaces.

2.12-3.6 Secure Holding Room

Where a secure holding room is provided in the freestanding emergency BHCC or the community-based BHCC, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.12-3.6.1 Space Requirements

The secure holding room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) and a maximum wall length of 12 feet (3.66 meters).

2.12-3.6.2 Prevention of Harm

The secure holding room shall be designed to prevent injury to patients.

2.12-3.6.2.1 A minimum ceiling height of 9 feet (2.74 meters) shall be provided. Where renovation work is undertaken and it is not possible to meet this minimum requirement, see Section 1.1-3 (Renovation) for guidance.

2.12-3.6.2.2 Finishes, light fixtures, vents and diffusers, and sprinklers shall be impact-, tamper-, and ligature-resistant.

2.12-3.6.2.3 There shall not be any electrical outlets, medical gas outlets, or similar devices.

2.12-3.6.2.4 There shall be no sharp corners, edges, or protrusions, and the walls shall be free of objects or accessories of any kind.

2.12-3.6.2.5 Secure holding room doors shall swing out and shall have hardware on the exterior side only.

2.12-3.6.2.6 A small impact-resistant view panel or window that meets the requirements in this section shall be provided in the wall adjacent to the door or in the door for staff observation of the patient.

(1) The glazing in the view panel or window shall be fabricated with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing or with any glazing that meets or exceeds the requirements for Class 1.4 per ASTM F1233: *Standard Test Method for Security Glazing Material and Systems*.

(2) Use of tempered glass for the view panel or window shall be permitted.

2.12-3.6.3 Door Opening

The minimum clear door opening for secure holding rooms shall be 44.5 inches (1.13 meters).

2.12-3.6.4 Patient Toilet Room

A ligature-resistant patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2.3 (Ligature-resistant design features) shall be provided immediately accessible to the secure holding room.

2.12-3.6.5 Sharing of Space in the Freestanding Emergency Department

Where a secure holding room is provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC, use of a secure holding room located elsewhere in the emergency facility shall be permitted.

2.12-3.7 Seclusion Room

Where a seclusion room is provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC or the community-based BHCC, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.12-3.7.1 Capacity

Each seclusion room shall be designed for single occupancy.

2.12-3.7.2 Location

2.12-3.7.2.1 The room shall be located to permit direct observation from outside the room.

2.12-3.7.2.2 Where more than one is provided, seclusion rooms shall be permitted to be grouped together.

2.12-3.7.3 Seclusion Room Space Requirements

2.12-3.7.3.1 Seclusion rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum dimension of 7 feet (2.13 meters).

2.12-3.7.3.2 Where a room for restraining patients is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.12-3.7.4 Seclusion Room Special Design Elements

Seclusion rooms shall be designed and constructed to avoid features that enable patient hiding, escape, injury, or self-harm.

2.12-3.7.4.1 Architectural details

(1) The walls, ceiling, and floor of the seclusion room shall be designed to withstand direct and forceful impact.

(2) Seclusion rooms shall not contain sharp corners or edges.

(3) Minimum ceiling height shall be 9 feet (2.74 meters).

(4) Doors

(a) Door openings shall have a minimum clear width of 44 inches (1.12 meters).

(b) The entrance door to the seclusion room shall swing out.

(c) Doors shall permit staff observation of the patient through a view panel, while also maintaining provisions for patient privacy. The view panel shall be fixed glazing with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing.

(5) Seclusion rooms shall have ligature-resistant design features that meet the requirements in Section 2.11-7.2.1 (Tamper and Ligature Resistance and Suicide Prevention).

(6) Visual Observation. Camera surveillance shall be permitted where direct visibility from the care team station is impeded.

2.12-3.7.4.2 Building systems

(1) All items in the room, including but not limited to lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads, HVAC grilles, and surveillance cameras, shall be tamper-resistant and designed to prevent injury to the patient.

(2) Electrical switches and receptacles are prohibited in the seclusion room.

2.12-3.8 Consultation Room

~~Where a consultation room is provided~~ A consultation room shall be provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC, ~~the requirements in this section shall be met~~.

2.12-3.8.1 Space Requirements for the Consultation Room

The consultation room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 square meters).

2.12-3.8.2 Patient Privacy

The consultation room shall be designed for acoustic and visual privacy. See Table 1.2-5 (Design Criteria for Minimum Sound Isolation Performance Between Enclosed Rooms) for acoustic requirements.

2.12-3.8.4 Sharing of Space

Where a consultation room located elsewhere in the emergency care facility is adjacent to the freestanding emergency department BHCC, it shall be permitted to be shared with the freestanding emergency department BHCC.

2.12-3.9 Group Room for Community-Based BHCC

A group room shall be provided in the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.9.1 Group Room Space Requirements

2.12-3.9.1.1 Size and dimensions of group rooms shall accommodate the number of seats expected in the most likely configuration for the most frequent number of occupants.

2.12-3.9.1.2 Rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 105 square feet (9.75 square meters) plus additional increments of 15 square feet (1.39 square meters) per person beyond five people.

2.12-3.9.2 Staff Assist Device

Each group room in the community-based BHCC shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally or another entity externally.

2.12-3.9.3 Door

At least one door into a group room shall swing out or be double-acting.

2.12-3.10 Outdoor Areas

Where outdoor areas are provided for the freestanding emergency department BHCC or the community-based BHCC, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.12-3.10.1 Fences and Walls

Fences and walls serving a locked patient care unit shall:

2.12-3.10.1.1 Be designed to hinder climbing.

2.12-3.10.1.2 Be installed with tamper-resistant hardware.

2.12-3.10.1.3 Have a minimum height of 10 feet (3.05 meters) above the outdoor area elevation.

2.12-3.10.1.4 Be anchored to withstand the body force of a 350-pound (158.76-kilogram) person.

2.12-3.10.2 Gates or Doors

Gates or doors in the fence or wall shall:

2.12-3.10.2.1 Swing out of the outdoor area.

2.12-3.10.2.2 Have the hinge installed on the outside of the outdoor area.

2.12-3.10.2.3 Be provided with a locking mechanism that has been coordinated with life safety exiting requirements.

2.12-3.10.3 Plantings

2.12-3.10.3.1 Trees and bushes shall not be placed adjacent to the fence or wall.

2.12-3.10.3.2 Plants selected for use shall not be toxic.

2.12-3.10.4 Lighting

2.12-3.10.4.1 Luminaires shall have tamper-proof lenses.

2.12-3.10.4.2 Luminaires shall not be accessible to patients.

2.12-3.10.4.3 Poles supporting luminaires shall not be capable of being climbed.

2.12-3.10.5 Security Cameras

Where provided, security cameras shall view the entire outdoor area and shall not be accessible to patients.

2.12-3.10.6 Furniture

Where provided, furniture shall be secured to the ground. Furniture shall not be placed in locations where it can be used to climb the fence or wall.

2.12-3.10.7 Elevated Courtyards or Outdoor Areas

Elevated courtyards or outdoor areas located above the ground floor level shall not contain skylights or unprotected walkways or ledges.

2.12-3.11 Reserved

2.12-3.12 Accommodations for Telemedicine Services

Where telemedicine services are provided in the freestanding emergency department BHCC or the community-based BHCC, the requirements in Section 2.1-3.4 (Accommodations for Telemedicine Services) shall be met.

2.12-3.13 Support Areas for the Behavioral Health Crisis Center

The freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC shall meet the requirements for the support areas as listed in this section.

2.12-3.13.1 Sharing of Space in the Freestanding Emergency Department BHCC

Unless otherwise noted, the freestanding emergency department BHCC is permitted to share the spaces in this section (Section 2.12-3.13 [Support Areas for the Behavioral Health Crisis Center]) with the emergency care facility where the spaces are readily accessible.

2.12-3.13.2 Nurse Station

A nurse station shall be provided for both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.13.2.1 Nurse station location

~~A nurse station positioned and sized to meet the behavioral and mental health program requirements shall be provided to allow staff to observe patient care areas.~~ The nurse station shall be located to allow staff observation of patient care areas.

2.12-3.13.2.2 Staff assist device

Each nurse station in the freestanding emergency room BHCC and the community-based BHCC shall include a staff assist device to communicate with other staff internally or another entity externally.

~~**Medication safety zone.** A medication safety zone shall be provided. See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.~~

2.12-3.13.3—2.12-3.13.7 Reserved

2.12-3.13.8 Medication Preparation Room

2.12-3.13.8.1 A medication preparation room for preparing, dispensing, and storage of medications shall be provided for both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.13.8.2 The medication preparation room shall contain the following:

(1) Work counter

(2) Handwashing station

(3) Lockable storage for controlled drugs

(4) Lockable refrigerator where drugs requiring refrigeration will be stored

(5) Sharps containers, where sharps will be used.

2.12-3.13.8.3 Space for self-contained medication dispensing units

Where a medication preparation room is used to store one or more self-contained medication dispensing units, the room shall be designed with space to prepare medications when the self-contained medication dispensing unit(s) is present.

2.12-3.13.8.4 Medication preparation room security controls

Medication preparation room security controls shall be provided as determined by the SRA and may include the following:

(1) Access from a staff only area

(2) Access control door hardware

(3) Full height walls to structure above

(4) Electronic surveillance

(5) View panels in doors

2.12-3.13.9 Nourishment Area

A nourishment area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) shall be provided for both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.13.10 Reserved

2.12-3.13.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Storage Room/Area

A clean workroom or clean storage room or area that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Storage Room/Area) shall be provided for both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.13.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom or soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided for both the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.13.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

Equipment and supply storage that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.13 (Equipment and Supply Storage) shall be provided for the freestanding emergency department BHCC and the community-based BHCC.

2.12-3.14 Support Areas for Staff

A minimum of one staff toilet room shall be directly accessible to the behavioral health crisis center.

2.12-3.15 Support Areas for Families and Visitors

A waiting and/or lounge area for family and visitors shall be readily accessible to the behavioral health crisis center.

2.12-4 Reserved

2.12-5 Building Support Facilities

2.12-5.1 Reserved

2.12-5.2 Waste Management

Waste management facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2.1 (Waste Collection and Storage Facilities).

2.12-5.3 Environmental Services

An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.12-5.4 Engineering and Maintenance Services

Where engineering services are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-5.4 (Engineering and Maintenance Services) shall be met.

2.12-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.12-6.1 Reserved

2.12-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas) and the requirements in this section.

2.12-6.2.1 Entrances

2.12-6.2.1.1 Entrances shall be secured where the behavioral and mental health crisis center is a stand-alone facility.

2.12-6.2.1.2 Where entrance lobby and/or elevators are shared with other tenants, travel to the behavioral and mental health crisis center shall be direct and accessible. Except for passage through common doors, lobbies, or elevator stations, patients shall not be required to go through other occupied areas or outpatient service areas.

2.12-6.2.1.3 Dual entries. The following dual entries shall be provided where individuals are escorted to the facility by either EMS or police:

(1) Public walk-in entry

(2) Discrete private entry located adjacent to intake area under staff observation

2.12-6.2.2 Reception

2.12-6.2.2.1 A reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk(s) shall be provided in the BHCC.

2.12-6.2.2.2 The reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk(s) shall be immediately visible from the entrance to the BHCC.

2.12-6.2.2.3 The reception/information counter, desk, or kiosk shall be located to provide staff with visual observation of the entrance to the BHCC.

2.12-6.2.3 Waiting Area

2.12-6.2.3.1 The waiting area for patients and escorts shall be under direct visual control of the reception desk staff or monitored via electronic surveillance.

2.12-6.2.3.2 Where the BHCC has a dedicated pediatrics service, a separate, access-controlled waiting area for pediatric patients shall be provided.

2.12-6.3 Administrative Areas

Each BHCC shall make provisions to support administrative activities, filing, and clerical work as appropriate. Administrative areas shall include the following:

2.12-6.3.1 Reserved

2.12-6.3.2 Interview Space

Space for private interviews shall be separate from public and patient areas.

2.12-6.3.3 Office Space

2.12-6.3.3.1 Separate and enclosed offices with provisions for privacy shall be provided.

2.12-6.3.3.2 Clerical space or rooms for typing and clerical work shall be separate from public areas to assure confidentiality.

2.12-6.3.4 Reserved

2.12-6.3.5 Medical Records

Design requirements for medical records shall be in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records).

2.12-6.3.6 Office Supply Storage

Office supply storage (e.g., closets, cabinets) shall be provided.

2.12-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.12-7.1 Reserved

2.12-7.2 Architectural Details and Furnishings

The standards set forth in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) shall be met as amended in this section.

2.12-7.2.1 Tamper- and Ligature-Resistance and Suicide Prevention

2.12-7.2.1.1 Where the behavioral and mental health portion of the safety risk assessment identifies suicide risk or staff safety concerns, architectural details, fixtures, and furnishings shall be tamper- and ligature-resistant in high-risk areas.

2.12-7.2.2 Door Hardware

2.12-7.2.2.1 Doors to patient toilet rooms in outpatient behavioral and mental health centers shall swing outward or have hardware that is double-acting and allows staff to control access.

2.12-7.2.2.2 Doors in areas that are not continually supervised shall be equipped with a locking set of hardware to prevent access by patients.

2.12-7.2.2.3 Door hardware at toilet rooms shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.12-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) in addition to the following requirements:

2.12-8.1 Reserved

2.12-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

For behavioral and mental health exam room HVAC requirements, see Table 8-2 (Design Parameters—General Outpatient Spaces) in ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE 170: *Ventilation of Health Care Facilities*).

2.12-8.6 Electronic Safety and Security Systems

2.12-8.6.1 Fire Protection System

Where the following fire protection system components will be accessible to patients, they shall be tamper- and impact-resistant and of a design to minimize ligature risks:

2.12-8.6.1.1 Fire extinguishers and cabinets

2.12-8.6.1.2 Fire alarm system devices

2.12-8.6.1.3 Fire sprinkler system components

2.12-8.6.1.4 Egress signage

2.12-8.6.2 Electronic Surveillance Systems

2.12-8.6.2.1 Where electronic surveillance systems are provided for the safety of patients, devices in patient care areas shall be mounted in a tamper-resistant enclosure that is unobtrusive.

2.12-8.6.2.2 Electronic surveillance system monitoring display screens shall be located so images on the screen are not visible to unauthorized individuals.

2.12-8.6.2.3 If warranted by the safety risk assessment, electronic surveillance systems shall receive power from the essential electrical system or a backup power source in the event of a disruption of normal electrical power.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: *Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities* has moved from Chapter 2.12 (where it appeared in the 2022 edition), to Chapter 2.13 (for the 2026 edition) to accommodate new chapters in the outpatient document. Section numbers have been updated editorially.

2.13 Specific Requirements for Outpatient Rehabilitation Therapy Facilities

2.13-1 General

2.13-1.1 Application

2.13-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities where rehabilitation therapy and services are provided.

2.13-1.1.2 The outpatient rehabilitation facility shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.13-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to outpatient rehabilitation facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.13-1.2 Functional Program

2.13-1.2.1 Shared Services and Space

~~See Section~~ Shared services and space shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared/Purchased Services) ~~for requirements~~.

2.13-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

~~See Section~~ Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size) ~~for requirements~~.

2.13-3 Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas

2.13-3.1 General

In rehabilitation centers where two or more rehabilitation services are provided, sharing of facilities and equipment between the therapies and services shall be permitted.

2.13-3.2 Physical and Occupational Therapy

Where physical and/or occupational therapy services are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.13-3.2.1 General

2.13-3.2.1.1 Space shall be provided for each type of rehabilitation therapy and service in the facility.

2.13-3.2.1.2 Therapy spaces shall be permitted to be shared with another function.

2.13-3.2.2 Therapy Areas

2.13-3.2.2.1 Individual therapy room

(1) Where an individual therapy room(s) is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

(2) Space requirements

(a) Area. An individual therapy room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

(b) Clearances. Room arrangement shall permit a minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) on at least three sides of the therapy furniture and equipment.

(3) Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in an individual therapy room.

2.13-3.2.2.2 Multiple-patient therapy or exercise area

(1) Layout. The layout of the multiple-patient therapy or exercise area shall include a staff work area located so staff can view activities taking place in the exercise area.

(2) Space requirements

(a) An open, barrier-free space for rehab therapy shall be sized based on the following:

(i) Number of patients to be treated at the same time

(ii) Number of staff members to be present at the same time

(iii) Manufacturer's clearance requirements for equipment used

(iv) Clearances to accommodate the therapist or other caregiver

(b) Where individual therapy spaces are included in a multiple-patient therapy or exercise area, each therapy space shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters).

(3) Patient privacy. Individual therapy spaces in the therapy or exercise area shall have provisions for patient privacy.

(4) Handwashing station. At least one handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided in the therapy or exercise area.

2.13-3.2.2.3 Therapeutic pool

(1) Size. Where therapy services include use of a pool, the pool shall be large enough to accommodate the number of patients to be served at one time.

(2) Patient changing area. A patient changing area shall be provided where therapy services include use of a pool.

(a) The patient changing area shall consist of single unisex rooms or a locker room to service multiple people of the same sex.

(b) The patient changing area shall be directly accessible to the pool without entering public or exercise areas.

(c) Patient toilet room. A toilet room shall be provided that is directly accessible to the changing area.

(d) Shower

(i) At least one shower shall be provided, and it shall be separate from the toilet room.

(ii) The shower shall be in or directly accessible to a room containing the following:

- Toilet in a separate enclosure
- Handwashing sink
- Storage for soap and towels

(e) Securable lockers shall be provided.

2.13-3.2.2.4 Movement evaluation area or room

(1) Size. Where movement evaluation services are provided, the room or area shall be large enough to accommodate the following:

(a) The number of patients to be evaluated at one time

(b) The number of staff, therapists, and caregivers present at one time

(c) Manufacturers' clearance requirements for equipment used

(2) The room care area shall be heated and cooled for patient comfort. Negative air pressure is not required due to the limited physical activity in the room.

(3) If the room is used by more than one patient at a time, provisions for privacy shall be provided.

(4) A handwashing station shall be provided.

2.13-3.2.2.5 Wheelchair evaluation area or room

(1) Size. Where wheelchair evaluation services are provided, the area or room shall be large enough to serve the number of patients programmed at a time. The area shall accommodate:

(a) Barrier-free patient seating

(b) Tool and positioning equipment storage

(c) A workbench

(2) Provisions for privacy shall be provided if the area or room is open to view.

2.13-3.3 Other Patient Care Areas

2.13-3.3.1 Prosthetics and Orthotics Area

Where provided, space for evaluation and fitting of prosthetics and orthotics shall meet the requirements in this section.

2.13-3.3.1.1 Privacy. Space for evaluation and fitting of prosthetics and orthotics shall have provision for privacy.

2.13-3.3.1.2 Handwashing station. The prosthetics and orthotics area shall have a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements).

2.13-3.3.1.3 Clinical sink. Where running water is needed in prosthetic and orthotic areas for materials preparation, a clinical sink(s) shall be provided.

2.13-3.3.1.4 Eyewash station. Where staff are required to work with or mix wet material or handle material or chemicals that are caustic, an eyewash station shall be provided.

2.13-3.3.2 Speech and Hearing Therapy Rooms

2.13-3.3.2.1 Application. Where speech and hearing therapies are offered, rooms that meet the requirements in this section shall be provided.

2.13-3.3.2.2 Space requirements. Speech and hearing therapy rooms shall have a clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 square meters).

2.13-3.3.2.3 Acoustic requirements. A gasketed door with a sweep shall be provided in speech and hearing room(s).

2.13-3.3.2.4 Handwashing station/hand sanitation dispenser

(1) See Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) to determine if a handwashing station must be provided in the speech and hearing area.

(2) A speech or hearing area that does not require a handwashing station shall have a dedicated hand sanitation dispenser.

2.13-3.4 – 2.13-3.7 Reserved

2.13-3.8 Support Areas for Therapy and Other Patient Care Areas

2.13-3.8.1 General

Sharing of these support areas with other clinical services in the same facility shall be permitted.

2.13-3.8.2 Reserved

2.13-3.8.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in all therapy service areas.

2.13-3.8.4 – 2.13-3.8.7 Reserved

2.13-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

Where medications are administered in the outpatient rehabilitation therapy facility, see Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.

2.13-3.8.9 Nourishment Area or Room

Where a nourishment area or room is provided, see Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) for requirements.

2.13-3.8.10 – 2.13-3.8.12 Reserved

2.13-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

~~**2.12-3.8.13.1 Clean and soiled linen storage**~~

~~(1) Storage for clean linen and towels shall be provided in cabinets, closets, or a separate storeroom, or space shall be provided for clean linen carts.~~

~~(2) Separate storage for soiled linen, towels, and supplies shall be provided.~~

2.13-3.8.13.1 Clean/soiled workroom, clean supply room/area and soiled holding room

(1) A clean workroom or clean supply room or area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

(2) A soiled workroom or soiled workroom shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room).

2.13-3.8.13.2 Storage for therapeutic equipment and safety devices. Designated storage for therapeutic equipment, safety devices, and other clinical supplies shall be provided for the following areas when they are part of the therapy services offered by the facility:

(1) Therapy or exercise area

(2) Therapy room

(3) Pool area

(4) Prosthetic, orthotic, speech, hearing, activities of daily living, or other therapy service locations

2.13-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair, lift, and gurney storage. Space shall be provided for storing wheelchairs, lifts, and gurneys.

2.13-3.9 Reserved

2.13-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.13-3.10.1 Patient Toilet Room

2.13-3.10.1.1 At least one patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) shall be provided.

2.13-3.10.1.2 Sharing of the toilet room(s) by patients and staff shall be permitted.

2.13-3.10.2 Provisions for Drinking Water

Provisions for drinking water shall be provided.

2.13-4 Reserved

2.13-5 Building Support Facilities

2.13-5.1 Reserved

2.13-5.2 Waste Management

~~See Section~~ Waste collection and storage facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2.1 (Waste Collection and Storage Facilities) ~~for requirements~~.

2.13-5.3 Environmental Services

2.13-5.3.1 An environmental services room shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.13-5.3.2 Where a therapeutic pool is provided, separate storage for pool chemicals and testing equipment shall also be provided.

2.13-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.13-6.1 Reserved

2.13-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.13-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided to support the administrative services performed in the outpatient rehabilitation center as indicated by an evaluation of staffing needs.

2.13-6.3.1 Office Space

2.13-6.3.1.1 Staff office space and file storage shall be provided based on the staff required to operate and provide therapy services.

2.13-6.3.1.2 Reception shall be permitted to be combined with office and clerical space.

2.13-6.3.2 Equipment and Supply Storage

Space for storage of office equipment and supplies shall be provided based on staff requirements and outpatient needs.

2.13-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.13-7.1 Reserved

2.13-7.2 Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings

~~See Section~~ Architectural details, surfaces, and furnishings shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) ~~for requirements~~.

2.13-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems).

~~**2.12-8.1 Reserved**~~

~~**2.12-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.2 (HVAC Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.12-8.3 Electrical Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.3 (Electrical Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.12-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~**2.12-8.4.1 General**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.12-8.4.2 Drainage Systems**~~

~~Where portable hydrotherapy whirlpools are used, the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.9 (Hydrotherapy facilities) shall be met.~~

~~**2.12-8.5 Communications Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.5 (Communications Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.12-8.6 Fire Alarm System**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.6 (Fire Alarm System) for requirements.~~

~~**2.12-8.7 Elevators**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.7 (Elevator Systems) for requirements.~~

2.14 Specific Requirements for Dental Facilities

2.14-1 General

2.14-1.1 Application

2.14-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities or portions thereof where dental procedures are performed.

2.14-1.1.2 The dental facility shall meet the requirements in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.14-1.1.3 Requirements set forth in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to dental facilities as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.14-1.2 Functional Program

This chapter contains elements common to most dental facilities. Special consideration shall be given to the specific demographics of the patients served, the type of dentistry procedures performed and level of sedation administered during procedures, whether the dental facility functions as a teaching institution, and any unique elements included in the functional program.

2.14-2 Reserved

~~**2.14-3 Dental Treatment Areas**~~

~~**2.14-3.1 General**~~

~~Each operatory shall be permitted to be a single-patient room or a patient care station in an open treatment area.~~

~~**2.14-3.2 Family/Pediatric Patient Care Spaces**~~

~~**2.14-3.2.1 General**~~

~~At least one operatory that is a single-patient room shall be provided when pediatric patients will be treated in a facility.~~

2.14-3 Patient Care Spaces

2.14-3.1 Dental Operatory

2.14-3.1.1 Number

2.14-3.1.1.1 At least one operatory that is a single-patient room shall be provided.

2.14-3.1.1.2 Additional operatories shall be permitted to be single-patient rooms or patient care stations in an open treatment area.

2.14-3.1.2 ~~2.14-3.2.2~~ Space Requirements

2.14-3.1.2.1 Dental operatory size

(1) Where procedures will be performed that require sedation, the operatory shall be sized to accommodate additional staff and equipment planned to be in the operatory and that which will be needed for emergency rescue.

(2) Where mobile or fixed imaging equipment is used in the dental operatory, space shall be provided to accommodate the equipment as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.14-3.1.2.2 Clearances. A minimum clearance of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters) shall be provided on all sides, including the head, of each dental chair when in the fully reclined position in all operatories.

2.14-3.2.3 – 2.14-3.2.4 Reserved

2.14-3.1.3 ~~2.14-3.2.5~~ Handwashing Station

2.14-3.1.3.1 ~~2.14-3.2.5.~~1 Each operatory shall include a handwashing station in accordance with Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations).

2.14-3.1.3.2 ~~2.14-3.2.5.2~~ If treatment is provided in an open treatment area, a handwashing station shall be permitted to serve two operatories.

2.14-3.2 Spaces for Administration of Sedation

2.14-3.2.1 Where sedation is administered, see Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.

2.14-3.2.3 Where required by the functional program, a recovery area for post sedation patient monitoring shall be provided.

~~**2.14-3.3 Spaces for Anesthetic Use**~~

~~A single-patient room(s) shall be provided for procedures that require anesthetic use. See Table 2.1-2 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems in Outpatient Facilities) for requirements.~~

2.14-3.3 – 2.14-3.7 Reserved

2.14-3.8 Support Areas for Patient Care Spaces

~~At minimum, the following shall be provided:~~

2.14-3.8.1 – 2.14-3.8.3 Reserved

2.14-3.8.4 Consultation Room

2.14-3.8.4.1 A consultation room shall be provided.

2.14-3.8.4.2 Use of the single operatory or a private office for this purpose shall be permitted.

~~**2.14-3.8.4.2** Where the consultation room is used for educational training, access to a sink and mirror shall be provided. Provision of these elements outside the consultation room/office shall be permitted.~~

~~**2.14-3.8.5 – 2.14-3.8.10 Reserved**~~

2.14-3.8.5 Training Room or Area

2.14-3.8.5.1 Space to accommodate dental care training of patients and family members shall be provided and shall include a sink, counter, and mirror.

2.14-3.8.5.2 This space shall be permitted to be in a room or in an alcove off a corridor in the treatment area.

2.14-3.8.5.3 Use of an operatory to serve the purpose of a training room or area shall be permitted.

2.14-3.8.6 - 2.14-3.8.7 Reserved

2.14-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zones

Where medication is prepared or dispensed in the dental facility, the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) shall be met.

2.14-3.8.9 - 2.14-3.8.10 Reserved

2.14-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

A clean workroom or supply room/area shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.14-3.8.12 Soiled Holding Room

Where a soiled holding room is provided, the requirements in ~~See~~ Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall apply ~~for requirements~~.

2.14-3.8.13 Equipment and Supply Storage

2.14-3.8.13.1 - 2.14-3.8.13.2 Reserved

2.14-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.14-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage for requirements.

2.14-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

~~A lounge, lockers, and toilet room with handwashing station shall be provided.~~Support areas for staff shall be provided meeting the requirements in Section 2.1-2.9 (Support Areas for Staff) as amended in this section.

2.14-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.14-3.9.1.1 A staff lounge shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.9-3.9.1 (Staff Lounge).

2.14-3.9.1.2 The staff lounge shall be permitted to be used as a staff meeting space where required by the functional program.

2.14-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

~~A patient toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) shall be provided.~~Where a patient toilet is required by the functional program, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room).

2.14-4 Patient Support Services

2.14-4.1 Laboratory Services

Where facilities for laboratory services are provided in the dental facility (e.g., phlebotomy, bleeding time), see Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services) for requirements.

2.14-4.2 Reserved

2.14-4.3 Sterile Processing

2.14-4.3.1 See Section 2.1-4.3 (Sterile Processing) for requirements in addition to the requirements in Section 2.14-4.3.2 (Countertop Length).

2.14-4.3.2 Countertop Length

2.14-4.3.2.1 Where a cassette system is used, the countertop shall be a minimum of 11 feet in length.

2.14-4.3.2.2 Where a tray system is used, the countertop shall be a minimum of 16 feet in length.

2.14-4.4 Radiography Services

2.14-4.4.1 Space Requirements

Where fixed or mobile imaging equipment is used outside of an operatory (e.g., panoramic x-ray, central periapical x-ray, or cone beam CT), the room or area shall meet the manufacturer's recommended clearances for installation, service, and maintenance.

2.14-4.4.2 Image management system

(1) Provisions for a digital image management system shall be made in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3.5 (Medical Records).

(2) Location of the image management system off-site shall be permitted.

(3) Where films will be developed on-site, a darkroom shall be provided to accommodate a large format processor, utility sink, duplicator, developing tank, and daylight-loaded processor.

2.14-4.5 Equipment Alcove

2.14-4.5.1 Where mobile devices (e.g., lasers) are used on an as-needed basis in an operatory, space immediately accessible to the treatment area shall be provided for staging such devices.

2.14-4.5.2 Where battery-powered equipment is stored, an electrical outlet for battery charging shall be provided.

2.14-4.6 Prosthodontics Lab

2.14-4.6.1 Pour-Up Area

Bench and cabinet space for equipment and materials shall be provided to mix, pour, and trim impressions.

2.14-4.6.2 Full Production Lab

Where a full production lab is needed, bench and cabinet space for equipment and materials shall be provided for the production of prosthodontics and creating dental impressions.

2.14-5 Building Support Facilities

2.14-5.1 Reserved

2.14-5.2 Waste Management

2.14-5.2.1 See Section 2.1-5.2.1 (Waste Collection and Storage Facilities) for requirements.

2.14-5.2.2 Mercury Reduction and Waste

In facilities delivering dental care, amalgam separation devices shall be installed that meet or exceed the requirements of ISO-11143: *Dentistry—Amalgam Separators.* See Section 2.14-8.4.3 (Amalgam Separator) for more information.

2.14-5.3 Environmental Services Room

See Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room) for requirements.

2.14-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.14-6.1 Reserved

2.14-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.14-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas).

2.14-7 Reserved

2.14-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems) in addition to the following:

2.14-8.1– 2.14-8.2 Reserved

~~**2.14-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.2 (Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning Systems) for requirements.~~

~~**2.14-8.3 Reserved**~~

~~**2.14-8.4 Plumbing Systems**~~

~~See Section 2.1-8.4 (Plumbing Systems) for requirements~~

2.14-8.3 Electrical Systems

A floor box shall be installed at each operatory chair position to eliminate trip hazards.

2.14-8.4 Plumbing Systems

2.14-8.4.1 Dental Water Purification System

2.14-8.4.1.1 Dental water purification systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.10 (Water treatment purification systems, equipment, and distribution) as amended in this section.

2.14-8.4.1.2 Direct feed or bottle fill water purification systems shall be permitted.

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: Chapter 2.15, *Specific Requirements for Short Stay Centers, is a new chapter for the 2026 edition.*

2.15 Specific Requirements for Short Stay Centers

2.15-1 General

2.15-1.1 Application

2.15-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to short stay centers (SSCs) that serve ambulatory surgery centers.

2.15-1.1.2 Short stay centers shall be designed and constructed for occupancy of not more than 16 individuals who have been discharged from an ambulatory surgery center.

2.15-1.1.3 The short stay center shall meet the requirements described in this chapter and the requirements in Part 1 of the *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.15-1.1.4 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to short stay centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.15-1.1.5 In the absence of local and/or state regulations, the maximum length of stay shall not exceed 72 hours.

2.15-1.2 Functional Program

2.15-1.2.1 Shared Services and Space

See Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared/Purchased Services) for requirements.

2.15-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

2.15-3 Patient Care Areas

2.15-3.1 Short Stay Patient Room

2.15-3.1.1 Capacity

The maximum capacity shall be one patient.

2.15-3.1.2 Space Requirements

2.15-3.1.2.1 Area. Short stay patient rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters).

2.15-3.1.2.2 Clearances. The dimensions and arrangements of short stay patient rooms shall provide a minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) between the sides and foot of the bed and any wall or any other fixed obstruction.

2.15-3.2.3 Windows

Each short stay patient room shall be provided with natural light by means of a window to the outside.

2.15-3.2.4 Patient Privacy

Provisions shall be made to address visual and speech privacy.

2.15-3.3 – 2.15-3.7 Reserved

2.15-3.8 Support Areas for the Short Stay Center

2.15-3.8.1 General

2.15-3.8.1.1 The support areas listed in this section (2.15-3.8) shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8 (Support Areas for Patient Care and Diagnostic Areas) as amended in this section.

2.15-3.8.1.2 The support areas listed in this section (2.15-3.8) shall be provided in or readily accessible to the short stay center.

2.15-3.8.2 Staff Workstation

2.15-3.8.2.1 A staff workstation shall be provided and shall be readily accessible to the short stay patient rooms.

2.15-3.8.2.2 Additional staff workstation requirements

(1) A means for facilitating staff communication shall be provided.

(2) Space for supplies shall be provided.

(3) Accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

(4) A hand sanitation dispenser shall be provided.

2.15-3.8.2.3 Visual observation from the staff workstation

(1) The staff workstation shall be located to permit visual observation of corridors connecting to short stay patient rooms.

(2) Electronic means of visual observation shall be permitted.

2.15-3.8.3 Documentation Area

Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided.

2.15-3.8.4 – 2.15-3.8.7 Reserved

2.15-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

Where provided, a means for dispensing medication shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones).

2.15-3.8.9 Nourishment Area or Room

2.15-3.8.9.1 A nourishment area or room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) shall be provided.

2.15-3.8.9.2 The nourishment area or room shall be readily accessible to the short stay patient rooms.

2.15-3.8.10 Ice-Making Equipment

2.15-3.8.10.1 Ice designated for human consumption

(1) Ice-making equipment that provides ice designated for human consumption shall be provided.

(2) This equipment shall be of the self-dispensing type.

2.15-3.8.10.2 Ice designated for treatment purposes

(1) Where ice-making equipment provides ice designated for treatment purposes, use of storage bin-type equipment for making and dispensing ice shall be permitted.

(2) This equipment shall be located in areas restricted to staff.

2.15-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

Where a clean workroom or clean supply room or area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.15-3.8.12 Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room

A soiled workroom or soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

2.15-3.8.13 Equipment Storage

2.15-3.8.13.1 A room or alcove shall be provided for storage of equipment for patient care.

2.15-3.8.13.2 This function shall be permitted to be shared with the clean workroom or clean supply room or area.

2.15-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.15-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 (Emergency equipment storage) for requirements.

2.15-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.15-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

The staff lounge with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided.

2.15-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

A staff toilet room with a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be readily accessible to the short stay center.

2.15-3.9.3 Storage for Staff

Storage (e.g., locking drawers, cabinets, lockers for staff personal effects) shall be readily accessible to the staff workstation.

2.16-3.10 Support Areas for Patients and Visitors

2.15-3.10.1 Patient Toilet Room

2.15-3.10.1.1 A minimum of one patient toilet room shall be provided for each short stay patient rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

2.15-3.10.1.2 Each patient toilet room shall contain a toilet and a handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

2.15-3.10.2 Patient Shower

Where a patient shower is provided, is shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8.4.3.3 (Showers and tubs).

2.15-3.10.3 Storage for Patient Belongings

Provisions shall be made for secure storage of patients' belongings.

2.15-3.10.4 Family and Visitor Lounge

Where provided, the family and visitor lounge shall meet the following requirements:

2.15-3.10.4.1 The lounge shall be sized to accommodate a minimum of one person for every four beds.

2.15-3.10.4.2 The lounge shall be readily accessible to the short stay patient rooms served.

2.15-3.10.4.3 A waiting room shall be permitted to serve as a visitor lounge.

2.15-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.15-4.1 Laboratory Services

Where provided, laboratory services shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-4.1 (Laboratory Services).

2.15-4.2 – 2.15-4.3 Reserved

2.15-4.4 Linen Services

2.15-4.4.1 Where linen is processed on-site, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4.2 (On-Site Linen Processing Area) shall be met.

2.15-4.4.2 Where linen is processed off-site, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4.3 (Support Areas for Outpatient Facilities Using Off-Site Laundry Services) shall be met.

2.15-4.5 Food Services

2.15-4.5.1 General

2.15-4.5.1.1 A warming/service kitchen for contracted food services or an on-site kitchen shall be provided.

2.15-4.5.1.2 Food service facilities and equipment provided shall conform to the standards of NSF International and other applicable codes.

2.15-4.5.2 Warming/Serving Kitchen for Contracted Food Services

Where a warming/serving kitchen is provided for food services provided by an off-site vendor, the requirements in this section shall be met.

2.15-4.5.2.1 Equipment. Equipment in the size and number appropriate for the type of food service being accommodated shall be provided

2.15-4.5.2.2 Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided in the warming/serving kitchen. See Section 2.1-7.2.2.8 (Handwashing stations) for requirements.

2.15-4.5.2.3 Nourishment area or room. The nourishment area or room in Section 2.15-2.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) shall be permitted to serve the function of a warming/serving kitchen.

2.15-4.5.3 On-Site Kitchen

Where an onsite kitchen is provided, the requirements in this section suitable to the type of food service provided shall be met.

2.15-4.5.3.1 The on-site kitchen shall be designed to accommodate the food service requirements described in the functional program.

2.15-4.5.3.2 Location. The on-site kitchen shall be located in the same building as the short stay patient rooms.

2.15-4.5.3.3 Regulations. On-site kitchen facilities and equipment shall comply with federal, state, and local building and health codes.

2.15-5 Building Support Facilities

Building support facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5 (Building Support Facilities).

2.15-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.15-6.1 Reserved

2.15-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.15-6.3 Administrative Areas

Administrative areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas).

2.15-7 Design and Construction Requirements

Short stay centers shall comply with the requirements in Section 2.1-7 (Design and Construction Requirements).

2.15-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems).

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: Chapter 2.16, *Specific Requirements for Sleep Disorders Centers, is a new chapter for the 2026 edition.*

2.16 Specific Requirements for Sleep Disorders Centers

2.16-1 General

2.16-1.1 Application

2.16-1.1.1 This chapter shall apply to facilities or portions thereof where patients are tested for sleep-related disorders.

2.16-1.1.2 The sleep disorders center shall meet the standards described in this chapter and the standards in Part 1 of this *FGI Facility Code for Outpatient Settings*.

2.16-1.1.3 Requirements in Chapter 2.1, Common Elements for Outpatient Facilities, shall apply to sleep disorders centers as cross-referenced in this chapter.

2.16-1.2 Functional Program

2.16-1.2.1 Shared Services and Space

See Section 2.1-1.2.3 (Shared/Purchased Services) for requirements.

2.16-1.2.2 User Control of Environment

2.16-1.2.2.1 Opportunities for individual control over as many elements of the environment as possible and reasonable (e.g., temperature, lighting, sound, and privacy) shall be evaluated during functional programming.

2.16-1.2.2.2 Patient and staff areas shall be provided with lighting that allows for individual control and provides variety in lighting types and levels.

(1) Patients shall have control at bedside of over-bed, ceiling, and/or wall sconce lighting.

(2) Patients shall have control of varied lighting in patient toilet rooms.

2.16-1.2.3 In addition to meeting the requirements in Section 1.2-2 (Functional Program), special consideration shall be given to the range of services provided in the sleep center and the specific demographics of the patients served.

2.16-2 Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size

Accommodations for care of individuals of size shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-2 (Accommodations for Care of Individuals of Size).

2.16-3 Sleep Disorders Center Patient Areas

2.16-3.1 Sleep Testing Room

2.16-3.1.1 General

Each sleep testing room shall be a single-patient room.

2.16-3.1.2 Space Requirements

2.16-3.1.2.1 Area. Each sleep testing room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 square meters).

2.16-3.1.2.2 Clearance. A minimum clearance of 3 feet (91.44 centimeters) shall be provided between the sides and foot of the bed and any other wall or fixed obstruction.

2.16-3.1.3 Handwashing station. A handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7.2 (Handwashing Station—Design requirements) shall be provided in the sleep testing room.

2.16-3.2 Control Room

2.16-3.2.1 A control room shall be provided for remote or direct observation.

2.16-3.2.2 The control room shall be, at minimum, sized and configured in compliance with the monitoring equipment manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service, and maintenance.

2.16-3.3 – 2.16-3.7 Reserved

2.16-3.8 Support Areas for the Sleep Disorders Center

2.16-3.8.1 – 2.16-3.8.7 Reserved

2.16-3.8.8 Medication Safety Zone

See Section 2.1-3.8.8 (Medication Safety Zones) for requirements.**2.16-3.8.9 Nourishment Area or Room**

Where a nourishment area or room is provided, see Section 2.1-3.8.9 (Nourishment Area or Room) for requirements.

2.16-3.8.10 Reserved

2.16-3.8.11 Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area

Where a clean workroom or clean supply room or area is provided, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room/Area).

2.16-3.8.12 Soiled Holding Room

A soiled holding room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room) shall be provided.

2.16-3.8.13 Equipment Storage

2.16-3.8.13.1 – 2.5-3.8.13.2 Reserved

2.16-3.8.13.3 Wheelchair parking. Space for parking of wheelchairs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.13.3 (Space for wheelchair parking).

2.16-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage. See Section 2.1-3.8.13.4 Emergency equipment storage for requirements.

2.16-3.9 Support Areas for Staff

2.16-3.9.1 Staff Lounge

2.16-3.9.1.1 A staff lounge shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-3.9.1 (Staff Lounge).

2.16-3.9.1.2 These facilities shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services.

2.16-3.9.2 Staff Toilet Room

2.16-3.9.2.1 A staff toilet room with handwashing station that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station) shall be provided readily accessible to the control room.

2.16-3.9.2.2 These facilities shall be permitted to be shared with other clinical services.

2.16-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.16-3.10.1 Reserved

2.16-3.10.2 Patient Toilet Room

2.16-3.10.2.1 At least one patient toilet room that meets the requirements in Section 2.1-3.10.2 (Patient Toilet Room) shall be readily accessible to the patient sleep testing room.

2.16-3.10.2.2 Toilet rooms shall be provided at the ratio of one patient toilet for every three patient sleep testing rooms and for each major fraction thereof.

2.16-3.10.2.2 Sole access to a shared patient toilet room shall not be through a sleep testing room.

2.16-3.10.3 Patient Shower Room

Where a patient shower room is provided, the following requirements shall be met:

2.16-3.10.3.1 Space for patient dressing shall be provided.

2.16-3.10.3.2 Location of the shower in the patient toilet room shall be permitted.

2.16-4 Patient Support Facilities

2.16-4.1 – 2.16-4.3 Reserved

2.16-4.4 Linen Services

Where linen services are provided, the requirements in Section 2.1-4.4 (Linen Services) shall be met.

2.16-5 Building Support Facilities

2.16-5.1 Reserved

2.16-5.2 Waste Management

Waste management facilities shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.2 (Waste Management).

2.16-5.3 Environmental Services Room

An environmental services room(s) shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-5.3.1 (Environmental Services Room).

2.16-6 Public and Administrative Areas

2.16-6.1 Reserved

2.16-6.2 Public Areas

Public areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.2 (Public Areas).

2.16-6.3 Administrative Areas

2.16-6.3.1 General

Administrative areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 2.1-6.3 (Administrative Areas) as amended in this section.

2.16-6.3.2 Office Space

If required by the functional program, office space for business, administrative, and professional staff shall be provided.

2.16-7 Reserved

2.16-8 Building Systems

Building systems shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems).

COMMENT PERIOD NOTE: The chapter below appeared in last edition (2022) as chapter 2.13, Specific Requirements for Mobile/Transportable Medical Units. Section numbers below reflect that change (from 2.13 to 2.17), but the entirety of the text is shown below, with non-changed text in black, approved deletions in red, and approved additions in blue. A duplicate mobile units chapter also appears in the Draft 2026 *FGI Facility Code for Hospitals* (chapter 2.7, Specific Requirements for Mobile Units).

2.17 Specific Requirements for Mobile~~/Transportable Medical~~ Units

2.17-1 General

2.17-1.1 Application

2.17-1.1.1 Applicable ~~Medical~~ Units

2.17-1.1.1.1 ~~Temporary basis~~ This chapter shall not be applied to modular/relocatable ~~medical~~ units that are prefabricated off-site and finished on-site and transported to a permanent foundation.

2.17-1.1.1.2 ~~This chapter shall not apply for mobile/transportable units that will not remain on-site more than 96 hours.~~

~~2.17-1.1.1.3~~ The requirements of this chapter shall not be applied to federally funded mobile~~/transportable medical~~ units designed for and placed into service to respond to a civil or local emergency or catastrophe.

2.17-1.1.1.4 Class 2 and Class 3 mobile units

2.17-1.1.4.1 This chapter shall be applied to Class 2 and Class 3 mobile~~/transportable medical~~ units that are used on a temporary basis.

2.17-1.1.4.2 In the absence of state and local standards, "temporary basis" shall be defined as a period of time not exceeding six months during any 12-month period from the time procedures commence inside the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit until the time procedures cease and it is transported off the host facility's site.

~~2.17-1.1.2 Medical Unit Type Designations~~ [Relocated to various sections in this chapter.]

~~2.17-1.1.2.1 Class 1 medical units~~

~~(1) Class 1 mobile/transportable medical units shall meet the requirements of one of the following commensurate with the clinical service provided:~~

~~(a) Exam or treatment room in Section 2.1-3.2 (Exam Room or Emergency Department Treatment Room)~~

~~(b) Class 1 imaging room as described in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (2) (Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures…) and amended in this chapter~~

~~(2) Provision of medical services for both inpatients and outpatients shall be permitted in Class 1 medical units where the units meet all the *Guidelines* requirements for the services provided as modified in this chapter.~~

~~2.17-1.1.2.2 Class 2 medical units~~

(1) Class 2 mobile/transportable medical units shall meet the requirements of one of the following commensurate with the clinical service provided:

(a) Procedure room in Section 2.2-3.4.2 (Procedure Room)

(b) Class 2 imaging room as described in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (2) (Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures…)

(2) Provision of medical services for both inpatients and outpatients shall be permitted in Class 2 medical units where the units meet all the *Guidelines* requirements for the services provided as modified by the requirements in this chapter.

2.17-1.1.2.3 Class 3 medical units

(1) Class 3 mobile/transportable medical units shall meet the requirements of one of the following commensurate with the clinical service provided:

(a) Operating room in Section 2.2-3.4.3 (Operating Rooms)

(b) Class 3 imaging room (hybrid operating room) as described in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (3) (Where a Class 3 imaging room is provided…)

(2) Use of Class 3 medical units is permitted where the units meet all the *Guidelines* requirements for clinical and support areas for the procedures being performed.

2.17-1.1.2.4 Hemodialysis facilities

(1) Provision of hemodialysis shall be permitted in a mobile/transportable unit of any class.

(2) Mobile units offering these services shall comply with Section 2.2-3.10.2 (Hemodialysis Treatment Area).

2.17-1.1.3 Mobile/Transportable Medical Unit Certification

2.17-1.1.3.1 Certification shall be provided in one of the following ways:

(1) The manufacturer of the mobile/transportable medical unit shall provide the governing body with drawings of the unit that have been signed and sealed by an architect or professional engineer.

(2) A third-party nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) shall provide the governing body with a field inspection report certifying the unit meets requirements as described in this chapter or other certification processes acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

2.17-1.1.3.2 The host facility and the mobile/transportable medical unit shall have on-site and available for review records of compliance with all relevant codes and standards required by this chapter for the following:

(1) Fire ratings of all structural materials and finishes

(2) Testing and calibration records, including those for:

(a) Air balancing

(b) Air filtration

~~(c) Sprinklers, where provided~~

~~(d) Biomedical equipment~~

~~(e) Electrical systems testing. See Section 2.17-8.3.1.2 (Testing and documentation) for requirements.~~

2.17-1.2 ~~Reserved~~ Class 2 and Class 3 Mobile Unit Documentation

2.17-1.2.1 Unit Documentation

~~**2.17-1.1.3.1** Certification shall be provided in one of the following ways:~~

~~(1)~~ The manufacturer of the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit shall provide the governing body with drawings of the unit ~~that have been signed~~ showing interior dimensions including corridor widths, ceiling heights, and ~~sealed by an architect~~ clearances around patient exam and treatment tables and fixed diagnostic ~~or professional engineer~~ treatment equipment.

2.17-1.2.2 Equipment Documentation

~~(2)~~ Where diagnostic and treatment equipment installed in the mobile unit will not meet testing, listing, and labeling requirements for use in the United States, ~~A~~ a third-party nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) shall provide ~~the governing body with~~ a field ~~inspection report certifying the unit meets requirements as described in this chapter or other~~ testing certification ~~processes acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ)~~ report.

2.17-1.2.3 Compliance Documentation

~~**2.17-1.1.3.2**~~ The host facility and the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit shall have on-site and available for review records of compliance with all relevant codes and standards required by this chapter for the following:

2.17-1.2.3.1 ~~(1)~~ Fire ratings of all structural materials and finishes

2.17-1.2.3.2 ~~(2)~~ Testing and calibration records, including those for:

(1) ~~(a)~~ Air balancing

(2) ~~(b)~~ Air filtration

(3) ~~(c)~~ Sprinklers, where provided

(4) ~~(d)~~ Biomedical equipment

(5) ~~(e)~~ Electrical systems testing. See Section ~~2.17-8.3.1.2~~ 2.17-8.3.1.1 (Testing and documentation) for requirements.

2.17-1.3 Site

~~**2.17-1.3.1 Unit Location**~~ [Relocated to various sections in this chapter.]

~~***2.17-1.3.1.1** Access for the unit to arrive shall be provided.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.2** The mobile/transportable unit shall be parked on a solid, level surface.~~

~~(1) Safeguards shall be in place to prevent movement of the unit while in use.~~

~~(2) Securing techniques shall be as defined by the unit manufacturer.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.3** A minimum separation of 25 feet (7.62 meters) shall be provided between any building outside air intake and any HVAC or generator exhaust from the unit.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.4** The location of the unit and routing of utilities shall avoid interference with appropriate access to and exit from all occupied areas, including exterior means of egress to a public way.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.5** Use of an exit from the building as an access point to the mobile/transportable unit shall not be permitted unless the exit is designed specifically to serve both functions.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.6** The unit shall be located to avoid interference with fire lanes and direct access to the host facility by emergency personnel and vehicles during an emergency.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.7** The unit shall be located where it shall not interrupt normal delivery of services for the host facility and shall not block facility infrastructure.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.8** Where the unit is located near vehicular drives or parking areas, impact barriers shall be provided.~~

~~**2.17-1.3.1.9 Placement of tractor or cab**~~

~~(1) Tractors and/or cabs that have fuel tanks with a capacity of less than or equal to 100 gallons (378.5 liters) and that do not support the mobile/transportable unit while it is in use shall be detached and located more than 10 feet (3.05 meters) from the host facility.~~

~~(2) Tractors and/or cabs with fuel capacities greater than 100 gallons (378.5 liters) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 30: *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*.~~

2.17-1.3.1 ~~Unit Location~~ Site Access

~~*2.17-1.3.1.1~~ Access for the unit to arrive shall be provided.

2.17-1.3.2 Mobile Unit Location

2.17-1.3.2.1 ~~**2.17-1.3.1.4**~~ The location of the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit and routing of utilities shall avoid ~~interference with appropriate access to and exit from all occupied areas, including exterior means of egress to a public way.~~ the following:

(1) I~~i~~nterference with ~~appropriate~~ access to and exit from all occupied areas, including exterior means of egress to a public way~~.~~

(2) ~~**2.17-1.3.1.6** The unit shall be located to avoid~~ I~~i~~nterference with fire lanes and direct access to the host facility by emergency personnel and vehicles during an emergency~~.~~

(3) ~~**2.17-1.3.1.7** The unit shall be located where it shall not interrupt~~ Interruption of normal delivery of services for the host facility ~~and shall not block facility infrastructure.~~

(4) Blocking of facility infrastructure

2.17-1.3.2.2 ~~**2.17-1.3.1.3** A minimum separation~~ Where the mobile unit will have plumbing, HVAC, or generator exhaust while in operation, a minimum separation of 25 feet (7.62 meters) shall be provided

between the mobile unit and any ~~building~~ host facility outside air intake ~~and any HVAC or generator exhaust from the unit~~.

2.17-1.3.2.3 ~~2.17-1.3.1.9~~ Placement of tractor or cab

(1) Tractors and/or cabs that have fuel tanks with a capacity of less than or equal to 100 gallons (378.5 liters) and that do not support the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit while it is in use shall be detached and located more than 10 feet (3.05 meters) from the host facility.

(2) Tractors and/or cabs with fuel capacities greater than 100 gallons (378.5 liters) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 30: *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*.

2.17-1.3.3 Mobile Unit Installation

2.17-1.3.3.1 ~~2.17-1.3.1.2~~ The mobile~~/transportable~~ unit shall be leveled when parked ~~on a solid, level surface~~ for patient care use.

2.17-1.3.3.2 Weight-bearing limits of the mobile unit shall be provided by the unit manufacturer.

2.17-1.3.3.3 ~~2.17-1.3.1.2~~ ~~(1)~~ Safeguards shall be in place to prevent movement of the unit while in use.

(1) ~~**2.17-1.3.1.2 (2)**~~ Securing techniques shall be as defined by the unit manufacturer.

(2) Lateral restraints that meet state and local codes shall be provided for the mobile unit.

2.17-1.3.4 Mobile Unit Site Features

2.17-1.3.4.1 ~~2.17-1.3.2~~ Parking. Sites shall provide parking for patients using the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit.

2.17-1.3.4.2 Traffic barriers. ~~2.17-1.3.1.8~~ Where the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit is located ~~near~~ adjacent to vehicular drives or parking areas, impact barriers shall be provided.

(1) Traffic barrier vessels (e.g., water, sand, concrete) shall be permitted.

(2) Fillable barrier vessels shall not be used empty.

(3) Steel pipe or solid filled impact bollards shall be permitted to be removable between unit site visits.

2.17-1.3.5 ~~2.17-1.3.3 Unit~~ Patient Access ~~from the Site~~ to the Mobile Unit

2.17-1.3.5.1 ~~2.17-1.3.3.1~~ Access to the unit shall be provided for wheelchairs, gurneys, stretchers, and patients with walkers.

(1) Where an electric power lift is used to meet this requirement, it shall meet one of the following conditions:

(a) ~~be~~ Be connected ~~either~~ to the host facility's essential electrical system

(b) ~~or~~ Be connected to the unit's essential power supply system ~~(EPSS).~~

(c) Have integrated battery backup power

(2) Stairs or ramps that are not integral to the manufactured unit and that provide an entrance into the unit shall be provided in accordance with the adopted edition of the following:

(a) Building code

(b) NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code*

(c) Accessibility code for new facilities

2.17-1.3.5.2 ~~**2.17-1.3.3.2**~~ Protection from rain, sleet, ~~wind,~~ and snow during transport of patients from the host facility to the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit shall be provided.

(1) Where protection to and from the host facility is provided by a fabric-type canopy, the material shall comply with adopted fire codes.

(2) Where provided, fabric (membrane) structures and supporting elements shall be designed to comply with local, state, and federal codes and regulations.

2.17-1.3.6 Access Between Mobile Unit and Host Facility

2.17-1.3.6.1 ~~**2.17-1.3.3.3**~~ Access to the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit from the host facility shall be marked and lighted.

2.17-1.3.6.2 ~~**2.17-1.3.1.5**~~ Where ~~Use of~~ an exit from the building will be used as an access point to the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit, ~~shall not be permitted unless~~ the building exit ~~is~~ shall be:

(1) ~~d~~Designed specifically to serve both functions

(2) Clearly labeled

2.17-1.3.6.3 ~~**2.17-1.3.3.2 (3)**~~ Where ~~provided,~~ a permanent, enclosed passageway from the host facility to the unit is provided, it shall be in accordance with all applicable building ~~codes~~ and ~~fire codes and separated from the unit by a fire wall as required for a building~~ and life safety codes.

2.17-1.3.6.4 A fire separation between the host facility and the mobile unit shall be provided as required by state and local building, fire, and life safety codes.

2.17-1.3.7 ~~**2.17-1.3.4**~~ **Site Utilities**

2.17-1.3.7.1 ~~**2.17-1.3.4.1**~~ The site or the mobile unit shall be provided with power, waste, water, telephone, and fire alarm connections to meet the requirements of the medical services provided and of state and local codes.

2.17-1.3.7.2 ~~**2.17-1.3.4.2**~~ Class 1 mobile units not connected to a host facility shall be permitted to be self-contained.

2.17-1.3.7.3 ~~**2.17-1.3.4.3**~~ **Utility connections**

(1) General. Where utility connections to the mobile unit are provided, cables and wires shall be protected from physical damage by one or more of the following methods:

(a) ~~(1) Concealment~~ Installation in conduits

(b) ~~(2)~~ Burial underground

(c) ~~(3)~~ Installation overhead

(d) Other means designed to protect against forms of physical risk

(2) Protection of host facility

(a) Plumbed utility connections to the mobile unit shall be valved.

(b) Electrical connections shall be provided with means to disconnect unit services from the electrical systems of the host facility.

(3) Where utility connections to the mobile unit will be provided in geographic areas where freezing temperatures occur, the utility connections shall be provided with freeze protection appropriate to the fluid in the connections.

2.17-1.4 ~~2.17-1.3.5~~ MRI Unit Site Requirements ~~for Patient Safety~~

2.17-1.4.1 ~~2.17-1.3.5.2~~ MRI ~~suite~~ Safety

2.17-1.4.2 Equivalency Options

~~2.17-1.3.5.2 (3)~~ Providers that are unable to comply with Section 2.3-3.6.5.1(Configuration of the MRI suite) (e.g., due to physical separation of the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit from the building) shall be permitted to submit an MRI risk assessment and risk mitigation plan prepared by a certified medical physicist, certified MR Medical Director, certified MR Safety Expert, or certified MR Safety Officer to the AHJ for a finding of equivalency.

2.17-1.4.3 Site Design

~~2.17-1.3.5.1 (1)~~ Where mobile~~/transportable~~ MRI units are used, siting designs shall allow the permanent facility and mobile~~/transportable~~ unit, together, to comply with the following:

2.17-1.4.3.1 ~~(a)~~ Section 2.3-3.6.5.1 (Configuration of the MRI suite)

2.17-1.4.3.2 ~~(b)~~ American College of Radiology (ACR) four-zone access control

2.17-1.4.3.3 ~~(c)~~ ACR screening protocols

2.17-1.4.4 ~~2.17-1.3.5.1~~ Magnetic Field Considerations~~.~~

2.17-1.4.4.1 Because magnetic fields generated by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) units may extend beyond the MRI scanner room, a perimeter shall be established to restrict entry of persons who have not been successfully screened for magnetic field contraindications into all areas around the MRI equipment with a static magnetic field of 9 gauss (0.9 millitesla) or greater.

2.17-1.4.4.2 ~~2.17-1.3.5.1~~ ~~(2)~~ For protection of patients, visitors, and health care workers, providers shall provide areas for the following:

(1) ~~(a)~~ Interviews

(2) ~~(b)~~ Clinical and physical screening

(3) ~~(c)~~ Ferromagnetic detection screening

(4) ~~(d)~~ Access controls to Zone 3 and Zone 4 areas

2.17-1.4.4.3 Cryogen vent (quench) pipe and area of site safety guidance shall be provided in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's technical specifications.

2.17-2 Reserved

2.17-3 Diagnostic and Treatment Locations

2.17-3.1 Mobile~~/Transportable~~ Units

2.17-3.1.1 ~~Space Requirements~~ General

2.17-3.1.1.1 ~~2.17-1.1.2.4~~ Hemodialysis facilities

(1) Provision of hemodialysis shall be permitted in a mobile/transportable unit of any class.

(2) Mobile units offering these services shall comply with Section 2.10-3.2 (Hemodialysis Treatment Area).

2.17-3.1.1.2~~2.17-3.1.2~~ Handwashing Stations. ~~**2.17-3.1.2.1**~~ All ~~mobile/transportable~~ Class 2 and Class 3 mobile ~~medical~~ units shall be provided with a handwashing station in accordance with Section 2.1-3.8.7 (Handwashing Station).

~~**2.17-3.1.2.2** Provision of a hand sanitation dispenser in lieu of a handwashing station shall be permitted in Class 1 imaging mobile/transportable units.~~

~~**2.17-3.1.1.1 Class 1 and Class 2 units. Where a Class 1 or Class 2** mobile/transportable medical unit cannot meet the *Guidelines* space requirements for the services provided in the unit, it shall meet the following space requirements:~~

~~(1) Class 1 units~~

~~(a) Minimum room dimensions and clearances shall be sized and arranged to accommodate the required equipment and clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's technical specifications for maintenance, operation of the equipment, operation of the clinician, and patient safety.~~

~~(b) In the absence of such specifications from the manufacturer, the governing body of the host facility shall complete a safety risk assessment regarding the acuity of the patients being served and the procedures to be performed to assure patient safety; see Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment).~~

~~(2) Class 2 units~~ [This paragraph has been relocated to 2.17-3.2.2.2 (2)(a)]

~~(a) The governing body of the host facility shall complete a safety risk assessment regarding the acuity of the patients being served in the unit and the procedures to be performed to assure patient safety; see Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment).~~

~~(b) Based on the safety risk assessment, the AHJ shall be permitted to grant an alternate method of compliance to all or a portion of the space requirements in the *Guidelines*.~~

~~**2.17-3.1.1.2 Class 3 units.** Class 3 units shall meet all *Guidelines* clearance and room dimension requirements for the procedures to be performed in the unit.~~

2.17-3.2 Mobile Unit Types

2.17-3.2.1 Class 1 Units

Where a Class 1 unit is provided for diagnostic and treatment services, it shall meet the requirements in Section 2.17-1.3 (Site).

2.17-3.2.2 ~~2.17-1.1.2.2~~ Class 2 ~~medical~~ U~~u~~nits

2.17-3.2.2.1 General. ~~**2.17-1.1.2.2 (2)**~~ Provision of medical and/or imaging services for both inpatients and outpatients shall be permitted in Class 2 ~~medical~~ units where the units meet all the *FGI Facility Code for Hospitals* requirements for the services provided as modified by the requirements in this chapter.

2.17-3.2.2.2 Class 2 medical unit

(1) ~~**2.17-1.1.2.2 (1)**~~ The Class 2 ~~mobile/transportable~~ medical unit~~s~~ shall meet the requirements ~~of~~ in Section 2.2-3.2.3 (Procedure Room), ~~one of the following~~ commensurate with the clinical service provided~~:~~.

~~(a) Procedure room in Section 2.2-3.4.2 (Procedure Room)~~

~~(b) Class 2 imaging room as described in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (2) (Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures…)~~

(2) Where the Class 2 medical unit is unable to meet the minimum space requirements in paragraph (1) in this section, room dimensions and clearances shall be sized and arranged to accommodate the manufacturer's technical specifications for the operation and maintenance of the equipment, operation of the clinician, and patient safety.

(a) ~~**2.17-3.1.1.1 (1)(b)**~~ In the absence of ~~such specifications from the manufacturer~~ requirements for room dimensions and clearances in the manufacturer's technical specifications, the governing body of the host facility shall complete a safety risk assessment regarding the acuity of the patients being served and the procedures to be performed to assure the space provided supports patient safety; see Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment).

(b) ~~**2.17-3.1.1.1 (2)(b)**~~ Based on the safety risk assessment, the AHJ shall be permitted to grant an alternate method of compliance to all or a portion of the space requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Hospitals*.

2.17-3.2.2.3 Class 2 imaging unit

(1) ~~**2.17-1.1.2.2 (1)**~~ The Class 2 ~~mobile/transportable~~ imaging unit~~s~~ shall meet the requirements ~~of one of the following~~ in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (2) (Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures), commensurate with the clinical service provided~~:~~.

~~(a) Procedure room in Section 2.2-3.4.2 (Procedure Room)~~

~~(b) Class 2 imaging room as described in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (2) (Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures…)~~

(2) Where the Class 2 imaging unit is unable to meet the minimum space requirements in paragraph (1) in this section, room dimensions and clearances shall be sized and arranged to accommodate the

manufacturer's technical specifications for the operation and maintenance of the equipment, operation of the clinician, and patient safety.

(a) ~~2.17-3.1.1.1 (1)(b)~~ In the absence of ~~such specifications from the manufacturer~~ requirements for room dimensions and clearances in the manufacturer's technical specifications, the governing body of the host facility shall complete a safety risk assessment regarding the acuity of the patients being served and the procedures to be performed to assure the space provided supports patient safety; see Section 1.2-4 (Safety Risk Assessment).

(b) ~~2.17-3.1.1.1 (2)(b)~~ Based on the safety risk assessment, the AHJ shall be permitted to grant an alternate method of compliance to all or a portion of the space requirements in the *FGI Facility Code for Hospitals*.

2.17-3.2.2.4 ~~2.17-1.3.6~~ Radiation ~~P~~protection for the Class 2 imaging unit. Radiation protection for ionizing radiation sources (e.g., X-ray and gamma ray sources) shall meet the requirements in the following:

(1) ~~2.17-1.3.6.1~~ Section 2.2-3.5.1.2 (Radiation protection)

(2) ~~2.17-1.3.6.2~~ National Council on Radiation Protection & Measurements (NCRP) report 147 (*Structural Shielding Design for Medical X-Ray Imaging Facilities*)

(3) ~~2.17-1.3.6.3~~ NCRP report 116 (*Limitation of Exposure to Ionizing Radiation*)

(4) ~~2.17-1.3.6.4~~ Applicable local and state requirements

2.17-3.2.2.5 ~~2.17-3.2~~ Pre- and p~~P~~ost-p~~P~~rocedure p~~P~~atient c~~C~~are a~~A~~reas for Class 2 units

(1) ~~2.17-3.2.1~~ Holding a~~A~~rea. ~~For Class 1 and Class 2 mobile/transportable units, a~~ A holding area shall be provided ~~either~~ in the unit or readily accessible in the host facility.

(2) ~~2.17-3.2.2~~ Recovery a~~A~~rea. ~~For Class 2 units, a~~ A recovery area(s) that meets requirements in Section 2.1-3.4 (Pre- and Post-Procedure Patient Care) shall be provided adjacent to or in the mobile unit.

2.17-3.2.3 Class 3 Units ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 Class 3 medical units~~

2.17-3.2.3.1 General. ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 (2)~~ ~~Use of~~ Class 3 ~~medical~~ mobile units ~~is permitted where the units~~ shall meet all *FGI Facility Code for Hospitals* requirements for clinical and support areas for the procedures being performed.

2.17-3.2.3.2 Class 3 medical units. ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 (1)~~ The Class 3 ~~mobile/transportable~~ medical unit~~s~~ shall meet the requirements ~~of one of the following~~ in Section 2.2-3.4.3 (Operating Rooms), commensurate with the clinical service provided~~:~~.

~~**2.17-1.1.2.3 (1) (a)** Operating room in Section 2.2-3.4.3 (Operating Rooms)~~

2.17-3.2.3.3 Class 3 imaging units. ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 (1) (b)~~ The Class 3 imaging unit shall meet the requirements ~~room (hybrid operating room) as described~~ in Section 2.2-3.5.2.1 (3) (Where a Class 3 imaging room is provided…), commensurate with the clinical service provided~~:~~.

2.17-3.2.4 ~~2.17-1.1.2.4~~ Hemodialysis ~~facilities~~ Units

~~2.17-1.1.2.4 (2)~~ ~~Mobile~~ Hemodialysis units ~~offering these services~~ shall ~~comply with~~ meet the requirements in Section 2.2-3.10.2 (Hemodialysis Treatment Area).

2.17-3.2.5 ~~2.17-1.1.2.4~~ Sterile Processing Units

Sterile processing units shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-5.1.2.2 (Two-room sterile processing facility).

2.17-3.3 – 2.17-3.7 Reserved

2.17-3.8 Support Areas for Mobile~~/Transportable Medical~~ Units

2.17-3.8.1 ~~Class 1 Units~~ Reserved

~~The following support areas shall be provided in the mobile/transportable medical unit or in the host facility but readily accessible to the mobile unit except as amended in this section:~~

~~**2.17-3.8.1.1 – 2.17-3.8.1.10 Reserved**~~

~~**2.17-3.8.1.11 Clean workroom or clean supply room**~~

~~(1) The clean workroom or clean supply room shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.11 (Clean Workroom or Clean Supply Room).~~

~~(2) A cabinet or closet shall be permitted to meet this requirement.~~

~~**2.17-3.8.1.12 Soiled workroom**~~

~~(1) The soiled workroom shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-2.8.12 (Soiled Workroom or Soiled Holding Room)~~

~~(2) A cabinet or closet shall be permitted to meet this requirement.~~

~~(3) The soiled workroom shall be permitted to serve both the mobile/transportable unit and an adjacent unit in the host facility.~~

~~**2.17-3.8.1.13 Equipment and supply storage**~~

~~(1) Storage areas for equipment, clean gowns, and supplies. These areas shall be permitted to be located in the host facility provided the areas are adjacent to the host facility's access point to the mobile/transportable unit.~~

~~(2) Storage for oxygen or other gases required for services provided in the mobile/transportable unit shall be provided.~~

~~**2.17-3.8.1.14 Environmental services closet**~~

2.17-3.8.2 Class 2 Units

2.17-3.8.2.1 Class 2 medical units. For the Class 2 units described in Section ~~2.17-1.1.2.2 (1)(a)~~ 2.17-3.1.2.1 (1) (Class 2 medical units—Procedure room), support areas that meet the requirements in the following sections shall be provided in the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit, in the host facility but readily accessible or adjacent to the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit, or a combination of the two:

(1) Section 2.2-3.4.6 (Support Areas in the Semi-Restricted Area). Where a scrub station is provided, it shall be located in the ~~mobile/transportable medical~~ unit.

(2) Section 2.2-3.4.7 (Support Areas Directly Accessible to the Semi-Restricted Area)

(3) Section 2.2-3.4.8 (Other Support Areas in the Surgery Department)

2.17-3.8.2.2 Class 2 imaging units. For the Class 2 units described in Section ~~2.17-1.1.2.2 (1)(b)~~ 2.17-3.1.2.1 (2) (Class 2 medical units—Class 2 imaging room), support areas that meet the requirements in Section 2.2-3.5.8 (Support Areas for Imaging Services) shall be provided in the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit, in the host facility but readily accessible or adjacent to the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit, or a combination of the two.

2.17-3.8.3 Class 3 Units

For Class 3 unit support area requirements, see Section ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 (2) (Use of Class 3 medical units…)~~ 2.17-3.2.1 (Class 3 Units—General).

2.17-3.9 Reserved

2.17-3.10 Support Areas for Patients

2.17-3.10.1 ~~Class 1 and~~ Reserved

2.17-3.10.2 Class 2 Units

The following support areas for patients shall be provided in the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit, in the host facility but readily accessible or adjacent to the mobile unit, or a combination of the two.

2.17-3.10.2~~1~~.1 A patient changing area designed for privacy

2.17-3.10.2~~1~~.2 Patient toilet room

2.17-3.10.2~~1~~.3 Storage for patient belongings. Space for storing patient belongings that meets the requirements in Section 2.2-3.4.10.3 (Support Areas for Families, Patients, and Visitors—Patient changing area).

2.17-3.10.3~~2~~ Class 3 Units

See Section ~~2.17-1.1.2.3 (2) (Use of Class 3 medical units…)~~ 2.17-3.2.1 (Class 3 Units—General) for requirements.

2.17-4 – 2.17-5 Reserved

2.17-6 Public and Administrative Areas

Public and administrative areas for Class 2 and Class 3 mobile units shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-6 (Public and Administrative Areas) as amended in the following sections.

2.17-6.1 Reserved

2.17-6.2 Public Areas

2.17-6.2.1 Public Waiting Space

2.17-6.2.1.1 Where a mobile~~/transportable~~ unit is placed at a host facility, the following shall be provided in the host facility:

(1) Public waiting area or room

(2) Public toilet room(s) readily accessible to the mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit

(3) Access to drinking water

(4) Access to public communications services

2.17-6.2.1.2 ~~For Class 1 and~~ Class 2 mobile~~/transportable medical~~ units~~,~~ shall provide a waiting area for patients to be received and wait for services ~~shall be provided either~~ in the unit or in the host facility.

2.17-7 Design and Construction Requirements

2.17-7.1 Reserved

2.17-7.2 Architectural Details and Surfaces for Unit Construction

2.17-7.2.1 ~~Requirements~~ General

~~(1)~~ The mobile~~/transportable medical~~ unit shall meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2 (Architectural Details, Surfaces, and Furnishings) for the type of service provided as amended in this section.

(2) Where area or clearance requirements cannot physically be met, refer to Section 2.17-3.2.2 (Class 2 Units).

~~**2.17-7.2.1.1 Corridor width.** Class 1 units that cannot physically meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.1 (Corridor width) shall be permitted to have a minimum corridor clear width of 2 feet 8 inches (81.28 centimeters).~~

~~**2.17-7.2.1.2 Ceiling height.** Class 1 units that cannot physically meet the requirements in Section 2.1-7.2.2.2 (Ceiling height) shall be permitted to have a minimum clear ceiling height of 6 feet 8 inches (2.03 meters).~~

2.17-7.2.2 Unit Stairs for Class 2 and Class 3 Units

~~**2.17-7.2.2.1**~~ Stairs for mobile ~~and transportable~~ units shall comply with NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code* for new facilities.

~~**2.17-7.2.2.2** Handrails shall be installed and constructed in accordance with NFPA 101, with the following exception: Provided the distance from grade to unit floor height is not greater than 4 feet 5 inches (1.35 meters), one intermediate handrail with a clear distance between rails of 19 inches (48.26 centimeters) maximum shall be permitted. (This exception is not applicable to existing units with a floor height of 5 feet 3 inches, or 1.6 meters, maximum.)~~

2.17-8 Building Systems

Class 2 and Class 3 units shall meet the requirements of Section 2.1-8 (Building Systems), as amended in this section.

2.17-8.1 Reserved

2.17-8.2 Heating, Ventilation, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

2.17-8.2.1 General

2.17-8.2.1.1 HVAC equipment, ductwork, and related equipment shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 90A: *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.*

2.17-8.2.1.2 ~~Class 1~~ Class 2 units. Mobile~~/transportable medical~~ units ~~that are limited to provision of non-invasive diagnostic and treatment services without use of anesthetics~~ shall meet the following mechanical requirements:

(1) Mechanical system design

(a) A minimum indoor winter design capacity temperature of 75°F (24°C) shall be set for all patient areas.

(b) Controls shall be provided for adjusting the temperature as appropriate for patient activities and comfort.

(2) Ventilation and space-conditioning requirements. All occupied areas shall be ventilated by mechanical means.

(3) HVAC ductwork. Air-handling duct systems shall meet the requirements of NFPA 90A.

~~**2.17-8.2.1.3 Class 2 units.** In addition to the requirements of Class 1 units, Class 2 units shall meet the requirements of~~

(4) ASHRAE Standard 170 for the services provided.

2.17-8.2.2 Air Intake

2.17-8.2.2.1 All outdoor air intakes and exhaust discharges shall meet the requirements of Part 3 (ANSI/ASHRAE/ASHE Standard 170).

2.17-8.2.2.2 Air intake for the mobile~~/transportable~~ unit shall be located a minimum of 25 feet (7.62 meters) from all plumbing vents, exhaust fans, sources of combustion, idling vehicles, and any other sources of noxious fumes or odors. This distance shall be increased if prevailing wind patterns dictate this is appropriate.

2.17-8.3 Electrical Systems

2.17-8.3.1 General

~~**2.17-8.3.1.1 Applicable standards**~~

~~(1) Class 2 and Class 3 units shall meet the requirements of NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* and NFPA 70: *National Electrical Code* for the risk category as described in NFPA 99 for the services provided in the unit.~~

~~(2) Class 2 and Class 3 units shall have an emergency power supply system (EPSS) installed in accordance with NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems* or be connected to the host facility's essential electrical system. For requirements, see Section 2.17-8.3.3 (Power-Generating and -Storing Equipment).~~

~~(3) For Class 2 and Class 3 units, electrical material and equipment (including conductors, controls, signaling devices, and information technology systems) shall be designed and installed in compliance with NFPA 99 and NFPA 70 for the risk category as described in NFPA 99 for the services provided in the unit.~~

2.17-8.3.1.~~2~~1 Testing and documentation

(1) For all units, electrical installations, including fire alarm, nurse call, emergency power supply system (EPSS), information technology, and communication systems, shall be tested for compliance with applicable codes and standards.

(2) A written record of performance tests on electrical systems and equipment shall show compliance with applicable codes and standards.

(3) When a unit is relocated, retesting of the systems shall be completed, and a written record of the retesting shall be provided showing current compliance with applicable codes and standards.

2.17-8.3.2 Reserved

2.17-8.3.3 Power-Generating and -Storing Equipment

2.17-8.3.3.1 Emergency power supply system (EPSS)

(1) Class 2 units. Emergency power supply for Class 2 units shall be provided by one of the following:

(a) A connection to the host facility's essential electrical system as required in Section 2.1-8.3.3.1 (Power-Generating and Storing Equipment—Essential electrical system)

(b) An integral EPSS with sufficient standby capacity to serve the code-required essential electrical load for no less than 4 hours

(2) Class 3 units shall be connected to the host facility's essential electrical system. See Section 2.1-8.3.1.1 (Electrical Systems—Applicable standards).

~~For Class 2 and Class 3 units that are not connected to the host facility's essential electrical system (see Section 2.1-8.3.3.1), a Level I EPSS as defined by NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems* shall be provided and shall be in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 110 and in Section 2.1-8.3.1.1 (Electrical Systems—Applicable standards).~~

~~(1) Emergency generator testing~~

~~(a) The host facility shall provide documentation showing that emergency generators that are an integral part of the mobile/transportable unit have been tested and inspected as required by NFPA 110.~~

~~(b) Documentation of such testing shall be maintained with the mobile/transportable unit at all times and shall be made available for review to the authority having jurisdiction.~~

~~(2) Fuel storage shall be provided on-site for enough fuel to run an on-board emergency generator continuously for at least 90 minutes.~~

~~(3) Emergency exit lighting shall be provided by battery backup or lighting fixtures served by the life safety branch of the EPSS.~~

~~(4) The emergency power supply system shall be grounded for lightning protection.~~

~~**2.17-8.3.4 Lighting for Procedure Spaces**~~

~~A portable or fixed exam light shall be provided for spaces where procedures are performed.~~

~~**2.17-8.3.5 Equipment**~~

~~**2.17-8.3.5.1 X-ray equipment.** Fixed and mobile/transportable X-ray equipment installations shall conform to requirements of NFPA 70.~~

~~**2.17-8.3.5.2 Inhalation anesthetizing locations.** For Class 2 and Class 3 units, all electrical equipment and devices, receptacles, and wiring shall comply with NFPA 99 and NFPA 70 for the building service category provided in the unit.~~

~~**2.17-8.3.6 Electrical Receptacles**~~

~~Grounded-type hospital-grade receptacles shall be installed in accordance with Section 2.1-8.3.6.2 (Receptacles in patient care areas).~~

2.17-8.4 Plumbing Systems

2.17-8.4.1 Reserved

2.17-8.4.2 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems

Plumbing and other piping systems shall be installed in accordance with applicable plumbing codes, unless specified herein.

2.17-8.4.2.1 Freeze protection. Water and sanitary lines to and from the unit shall have a means of freeze protection as required by the geographic location of the host facility.

2.17-8.4.2.2 Dialysis plumbing. For plumbing requirements for dialysis procedures, see sections 2.1-8.4.2.2 (Hemodialysis/hemoperfusion water distribution) and 2.2-3.10.8.18 (Hemodialysis water treatment equipment area).

2.17-8.4.2.3 Sterile processing plumbing. For plumbing requirements for sterile processing, see Section 2.1-8.4.2.3 (Medical device processing water distribution).

2.17-8.4.2.~~3~~4 Water supply connection. Backflow prevention shall be installed at the point of water connection on the unit.

2.17-8.4.2.~~4~~5 Waste connection. All waste lines shall be designed and constructed to discharge into the host facility sanitary sewage system, into a holding tank, or directly into the utility sewage system.

2.17-8.4.3 Plumbing Vents

Venting through the roof shall not be required for handwashing stations in mobile~~/transportable~~ units. Waste lines shall be permitted to be vented through the sidewalls or other locations that meet the plumbing code.

2.17-8.4 Plumbing Systems

2.17-8.4.1 Reserved

2.17-8.4.2 Plumbing and Other Piping Systems

Plumbing and other piping systems shall be installed in accordance with applicable plumbing codes, unless specified herein.

2.17-8.4.2.1 Freeze protection. Water and sanitary lines to and from the mobile unit shall have a means of freeze protection as required by the geographic location of the host facility.

2.17-8.4.2.2 Dialysis plumbing. For plumbing requirements for dialysis procedures, see sections 2.1-8.4.2.2 (Hemodialysis/hemoperfusion water distribution) and 2.2-3.10.8.18 (Hemodialysis water treatment equipment area).

2.17-8.4.2.4 Water supply connection. Backflow prevention shall be installed at the point of water connection on the unit.

2.17-8.4.2.5 Waste connection. All waste lines shall be designed and constructed to discharge into the host facility sanitary sewage system, into a holding tank, or directly into the utility sewage system.

2.17-8.4.3 Plumbing Vents

2.17-8.4.3.1 Venting through the roof shall not be required for handwashing stations in mobile~~/transportable~~ units.

2.17-8.4.3.2 Waste lines shall be permitted to be vented through the sidewalls or other locations that meet the plumbing code.

2.17-8.4.4 Medical Gas and Vacuum Systems

2.17-8.4.4.1 Where medical gas and vacuum systems are provided, they shall meet the requirements in the following:

(1) Table 2.1-3 (Oxygen, Vacuum, Medical Air, WAGD, and Instrument Air Systems)

(2) NFPA 99: *Health Care Facilities Code* for the building system category provided in the unit

~~**2.17-8.4.4.2** Class 1 mobile/transportable units shall be permitted to use cylinder oxygen and portable suction units with integral battery backup where critical care patients are not served and greater than minimal sedation is not administered.~~

2.17-8.5 Communications ~~and Technology~~ Systems

2.17-8.5.1 ~~Emergency Communication System~~ Nurse Call Devices

~~**2.17-8.5.1.1** A means for connecting the unit to the hospital emergency communication system shall be provided.~~

~~2.17-8.5.1.1~~ Nurse call devices for Class 2 and Class 3 mobile mobile units shall be provided in accordance with Table 2.1-2 (Locations for Nurse Call Devices in Hospitals) as amended in this section.

~~2.17-8.5.1.2 Omission of the emergency call station shall be permitted in a Class 1 imaging unit.~~

2.17-8.5.2 Phone Connection

~~A telephone shall be located~~ A means for phone communication shall be provided in~~side~~ the mobile unit ~~to communicate directly with the host facility's public branch exchange or a continually staffed location inside the host facility~~.

2.17-8.6 Safety and Security Systems

2.17-8.6.1 Fire Alarm System

~~Fire~~ Means for fire alarm notification shall be provided from the unit to the host facility and from the host facility to the unit while the unit is on-site and connected to or located within 30 feet of the host facility.

2.17-8.6.1.1 Fire alarm connections. Where a unit connects to a building, the connecting link and/or passageway shall be equipped with fire alarm systems and with smoke detection as required by state and local fire code requirements and NFPA 101.

(1) The fire alarm system shall comply with minimum requirements for the fire alarm system of the building to which the unit is connected in accordance with state and local requirements and NFPA 101.

(2) Where a fire alarm system is provided, at least one manual pull station shall be provided in the unit or in the connecting passageway where the unit attaches to the building in accordance with NFPA 72: *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*.

2.17-8.6.1.2 Fire alarm notification. Fire alarm notification for all units shall be provided by one of the following methods:

(1) An auto-dialer directly connected to the fire department or third-party respondent and connected to the unit's smoke detectors or manual pull station

(2) Any mobile unit fire alarm device activation connected to the host facility's building fire alarm system

2.17-8.6.1.3 Fire protection equipment. A manual fire extinguisher shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 10: *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*.